

The Official Pokémon Strategy Guide

How to Use this eGuide

This eGuide has a custom navigation system to allow you to easily find content within the eGuide and move between sections as you choose.





Everything is new in the world of Pokémon!

With Pokémon Black Version and Pokémon White Version, Pokémon enters a whole new chapter. Whether you're a longtime fan or a Pokémon beginner, these games are for you!

Tips for Beginners Pokémon opens a new chapter

Become a Pokémon Trainer and set out on a new adventure with your Pokémon.

The world of Pokémon is full of exciting adventures, just waiting to be discovered, and you get to be the hero of this epic story.

At the beginning of your adventure, choose one Pokémon as your partner.

One of these three Pokémon—Snivy, Tepig, or Oshawott—will become your first partner. It's up to you to choose!











Tour adventure takes place in the brand-new Unova region, full of Pokémon you've never seen before!

Pokémon Black Version and White Version take place in the recently discovered Unova region.

Unova is filled with Pokémon you've never seen before, and exciting new places like the bustling metropolis called Castelia City!





Every Pokémon Trainer has two major goals in mind. The first, to battle other Trainers and Gym Leaders to claim victory and become the Pokémon League Champion! You'll need to train a strong Pokémon team to defeat these tough opponents.



Goal #2
Complete the Pokédex!

And, catch every kind of Pokémon in the Unova region to complete your Pokédex! You have a long road ahead of you, but the challenge is sure to make you—and your Pokémon team—even stronger!



The Official Pokémon Strategy Guide Contents

Unova Region Map4	
Weekly Event Calendar 6	
Daily Event List	
Recommended Route9	
Key Characters	
How to use this Book	
Primer for Pokémon Training20	
	ı
Become Friends with Pokémon21	
Winning Strategies30	
Using the Game Functions	
Town Shops and Services	
Time and Seasons in Unova	
Communicate with the Easy Chat System49	
Unova Adventure Walkthrough56	
	ı
Nuvema Town	
Route 1	
Accumula Town	
Route 2	
Striaton City	
Dreamyard	
Route 3	
Wellspring Cave	
Nacrene City	
Pinwheel Forest	
Castelia City 92	
Route 4 98	
Desert Resort	
Relic Castle 102	
Nimbasa City	
Anville Town 109	
Route 16 • Lostlorn Forest	
Route 5	
Driftveil Drawbridge114	
Driftveil City	
Cold Storage	
Route 6	
Chargestone Cave	
Mistralton City	
Route 7	
Celestial Tower	
Twist Mountain	
Route 17 • Route 18 • P2 Laboratory	
Mistralton Cave 143 Icirrus City 146	
Dragonspiral Tower	
Route 8 • Moor of Icirrus	
Tubeline Bridge	
Route 9	
Shopping Mall Nine	
Opelucid City (Pokémon Black Version)160	
Opelucid City (Pokémon White Version)164	
Route 10	
Victory Road	
Pokémon League	
N's Castle	
A New World of Adventure	
Dreamyard	
Royal Unova	
Relic Castle 190	
Challenger's Cave	
Pokémon League 196	

Route 15	204
Black City (Pokémon Black Version)	208
Nhite Forest (Pokémon White Version)	210
Route 14	212
Abundant Shrine	214
Jndella Town	216
Jndella Bay • Abyssal Ruins	218
Route 13	
acunosa Town	224
Giant Chasm	225
Route 12	228
/illage Bridge	229
Route 11	
our Adventure after the Hall of Fame	232
Trainer List	235





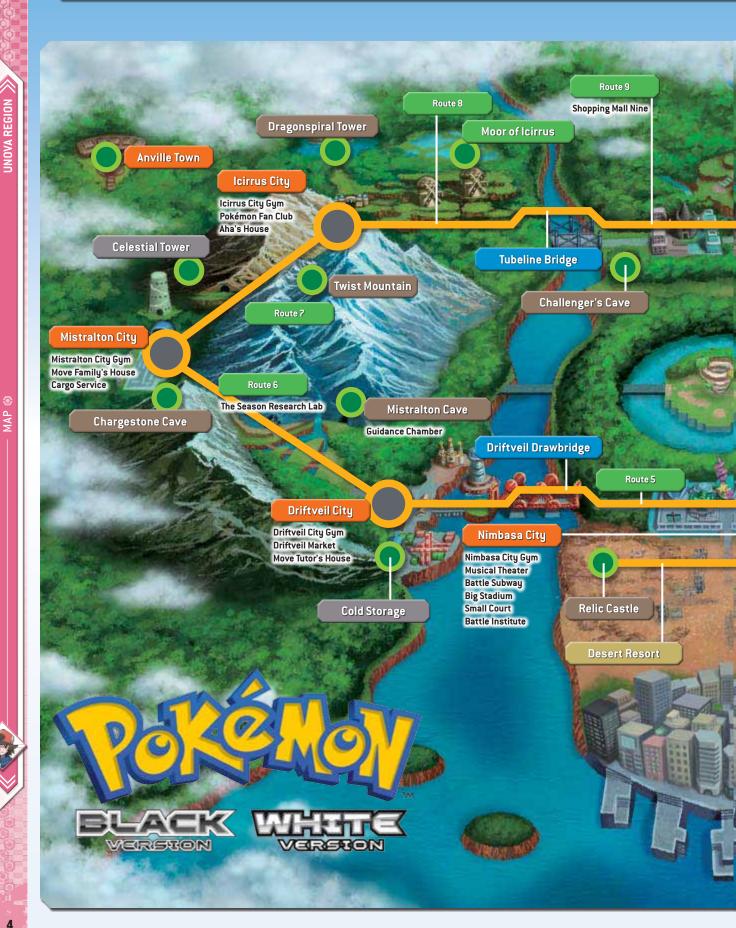


Special Sections	
Pokémon That Learn Many of the Field Moves	115
People Who Look After Pokémon	120
Trade Pokémon with People in the City	150
Keep Training Your Pokémon for the Tough Battles Ahead	185
Various Items and the People Who Buy Them	200
Take the Battle Test at the Battle Institute	203
Changes in the Weather	206
Search for the Remaining Seven Sages	233

Town and Route Quick Index • By Route Number • Alphabetical by Name Route 4......98 Anville Town...........109 Opelucid City Route 692 Opelucid City Route 8154 Challenger's Cave195 P2 Laboratory140 Route 9......157 Chargestone Cave126 Pinwheel Forest87 Route 10 168 Cold Storage 121 Pokémon League... 174, 196 Route 11231 Desert Resort.......100 Relic Castle102, 190 Route 13221 Dreamyard73, 187 Shopping Mall Nine....159 Route 14......212 Driftveil City.......116 The Skyarrow Bridge ... 91 Route 15.....204 Driftveil Drawbridge.. 114 Striaton City................68 Route 17......140 Icirrus City.......146 Twist Mountain........136 Route 18......224 Undella Bay......218 Lostlorn Forest.......110 Undella Town216 Marvelous Bridge 201 Victory Road 171 Mistralton Cave143 Village Bridge229 Mistralton City 129 Wellspring Cave........... 78 Nacrene City.....82

Unova Region

Map



This is the map of the Unova region, where your adventure awaits. All of the cities, towns, routes, caves, and other important places are listed.



UNOVA REGION 🚿

WEEKLY EVENT CALENDAR (*)

Unova Region

Pokémon Training

Weekly Event Calendar

Wednesday Castelia City Nacrene City Time Anytime Anytime In the spring, summer, and Visit Café Warehouse, and autumn, you can buy a the Waitress will give you a Casteliacone at the stand Soda Pop. on Mode Street. **Events Nimbasa City** Football Baseball Soccer **Big Stadium** Time Anytime Except for 2 P.M. through Except for 2 P.M. through Except for 2 P.M. through 5 P.M., you can battle 4 P.M., you can battle 4 P.M., you can battle Trainers at the stadium. Trainers at the stadium. Trainers at the stadium. **Nimbasa City** Tennis Basketball **Tennis Small Court** Anytime Time Except for 10 A.M. through Except for 10 A.M. through Except for 10 A.M. through 11 A.M., you can battle noon, you can battle Trainers 11 A.M., you can battle Trainers at the court. at the court. Trainers at the court. **Castelia City** Battle Challenge Battle Challenge Battle Challenge Royal Unova Time Evening When you defeat four When you defeat three When you defeat four Trainers, you will receive a Trainers, you will receive a Trainers, you will receive a (After finishing the main story) Lava Cookie. Lava Cookie. Berry Juice.

In the Unova region, some items are sold only on certain days of the week, and some Trainers will battle you only on specific days. Check this calendar for all the events.

Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
	Tubeline Bridge Time Evening, Night When you defeat the boss of the Bikers, he will rename his team after your lead Pokémon.	Anville Town Time Anytime Traders gather when there is a train on the turntable. Three people will exchange items with you.	Anville Town Time Anytime Traders gather when there is a train on the turntable. Three people will exchange items with you.
	Dreamyard Time Anytime Go to the tall grass in the basement and Musharna will appear (after finishing the main story).	Nuvema Town Time Anytime At Juniper Pokémon Lab, you can have a Pokémon battle against Bianca (after finishing the main story).	Lacunosa Town Time Night, Late Night Talk to him and he'll give you one of the following Berries: Pecha Berry, Bluk Berry, Lum Berry, Leppa Berry.
			Nuvema Town Time Anytime At Juniper Pokémon Lab, you can have a Pokémon battle against Bianca (after the Hall of Fame.)
Except for 2 P.M. through 5 P.M., you can battle Trainers at the stadium.	Except for 2 P.M. through 4 P.M., you can battle Trainers at the stadium.	Except for 2 P.M. through 4 P.M., you can battle Trainers at the stadium.	Except for 2 P.M. through 5 P.M., you can battle Trainers at the stadium.
Except for 10 A.M. through noon, you can battle Trainers at the court.	Tennis Except for 10 A.M. through 11 A.M., you can battle Trainers at the court.	Except for 10 A.M. through noon, you can battle Trainers at the court.	Tennis Except for 10 A.M. through 11 A.M., you can battle Trainers at the court.
When you defeat five Trainers, you will receive an Old Gateau.	When you defeat four Trainers, you will receive a Lava Cookie.	When you defeat six Trainers, you will receive a RageCandyBar.	When you defeat seven Trainers, you will receive a Rare Candy.



Unova Region

Daily Event List



At the challenge rock, you can obtain a Star Piece

Pokémon Training



Pinwheel Forest Where Entrance

Bring a Fighting-type Pokémon with your party and try to smash the challenge rock. You'll obtain one Star Piece a day.





Show the right Pokémon and receive a Berry



Show a Pokémon of the requested type to the Harlequin and receive one of the following Berries a day: Aspear Berry, Cheri Berry, Chesto Berry, Pecha Berry, Rawst Berry.





Ride the Ferris wheel after a Pokémon battle

Nimbasa City in front of the Ferris wheel

After you defeat the Nimbasa City Gum Leader, defeat the Trainer in front of the Ferris wheel to ride it. The Trainer changes depending on the season and your gender.





Show the right Pokémon and receive a Heart Scale

Where A house in Driftveil City

In the house to the west of the Pokémon Center is a lady who'll give you a Heart Scale if you show her a Pokémon with the move she wants





Where Route 8

at night.

The Parasol Lady will give you

One of the Parasol Ladies gives you

a Damp Rock in the morning, a Heat

Rock during the afternoon, a Smooth

Rock in the evening, and an Icy Rock



Pick up Props from this Pokémon Musical fan



In the house west of the Pokémon Center is an old man who gives you a Prop a day until you've received all





Have fun with new Rotation Battles or Triple Battles

Opelucid City Where Battle House

In the Battle House, you can challenge a Trainer to a Rotation Battle in Pokémon Black Version or a Triple Battle in Pokémon White Version.





Battle with Morimoto

Castelia City Where GAME FREAK

You can battle Morimoto on floor 22F of the GAME FREAK building. Morimoto's Pokémon are at high levels, so they're pretty tough!

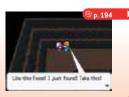




Receive Fossils to restore Pokémon



Talk to the Worker on the Lower Level 1 of Twist Mountain and receive one Fossil a day to restore Pokémon from other regions.





Visit Cheren for a daily dose of battling

Where Victory Road 7F

Talk to Cheren on Route 5 and go to Victory Road 7F to battle him once a day.





Battle Trainers in the city

Black City (Pokémon Black Version)

Talk to the people in the city and you can have a Pokémon battle once a dau. You'll receive a reward from the city's boss based on the number of wins





Show the right Pokémon and receive a Berry

White Forest (Pokémon White Version)

Show the mayor the Pokémon he wants to see and receive one of the following Berries a day: Leppa Berry, Pecha Berry, Bluk Berry, Lum Berry, Chesto Berry.





Visit Cynthia in the spring to challenge her to a battle

Undella Town Cynthia's Villa

Talk to Cynthia in the Villa in the spring and you can battle her once a day. You cannot battle her in the summer, and she's not there in the





Challenge the entire Riches family to battle

Undella Town Where Big Villa

Battle Draco outside first, then more and more of his family members will challenge you. Defeat Miles, the sixth family member, to end the





Visit Route 13 to pick up some hard-to-find items

Where Route 13

This man with sunglasses gives you an item every day. He has 27 different items to give away, and most of them cannot be obtained by any other method.





Do a good job waiting tables and you'll receive a Lum Berry



Defeat Baker Chris and talk to her for a job offer! Take orders and serve the customers correctly, and you'll receive a Lum Berry.



In the Unova region, you can revisit certain places or people every day to receive an item or have a Pokémon battle. Check this list and visit them every day! Events colored • are available after finishing the main story.



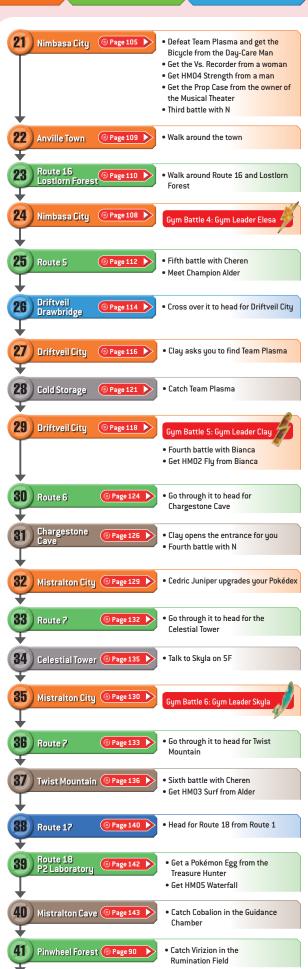
Pokémon Training

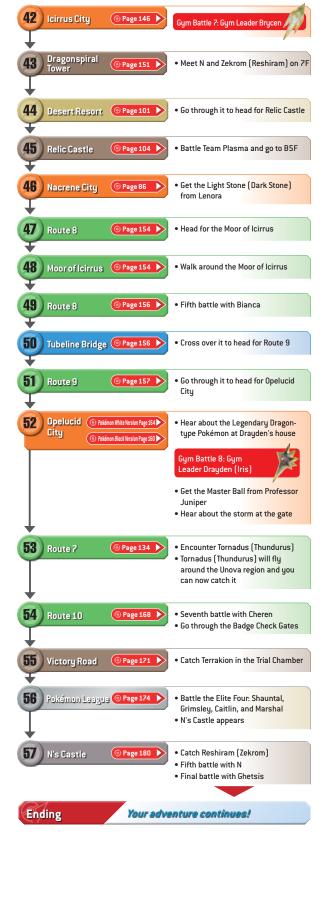
Unova Region Recommended Route

Below is a recommended route for your adventure. Use this guide to check your progress or figure out where to go next.



RECOMMENDED_ROUTE





UNOVA REGION 🚿

RECOMMENDED ROUTE (4)

Route 13

Page 221

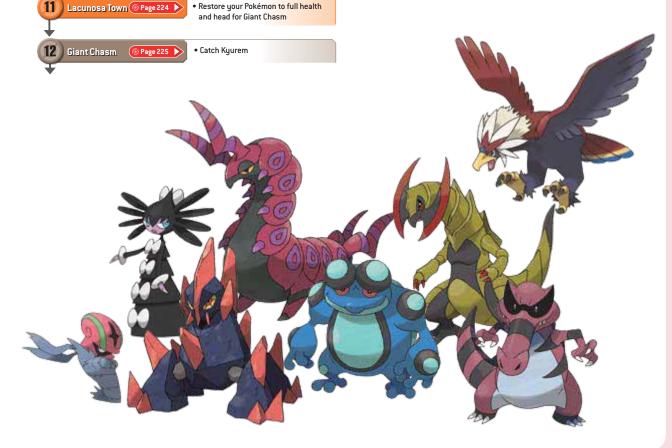
• Go through it to head for Lacunosa Town

• Restore your Pokémon to full health





Set out to complete your Pokedex!





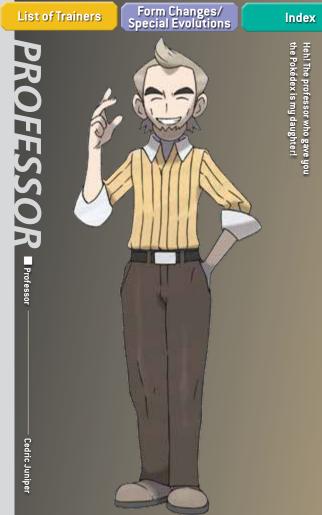


















Walkthrough

If their Pokémon are liberated, Trainers will no longer be Trainers!



Then, and only then, will humans and Pokémon truly be equals.

That's right! We must liberate the Pokémon!





TEAM PLASMA • One of the Seven Sages

Male

TEAM PLASMA - GERT

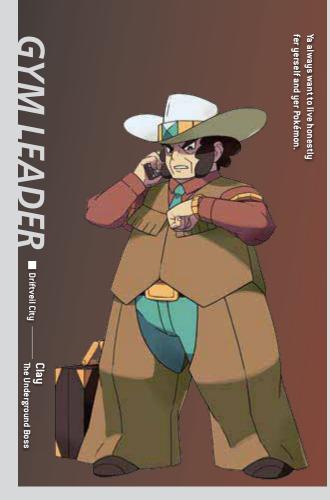
Ghetsis

Key Characters













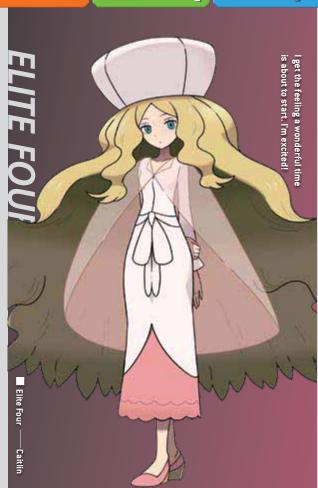
















How to Use This Book

Choose the section you want to learn more about



Primer for Pokémon Training

This primer has basic information on the games and the world of Pokémon. It also explains the features new to *Pokémon Black* and *Pokémon White*

Page 20



Unova Adventure Walkthrough

From Nuvema Town all the way to defeating Champion Alder, this walkthrough will guide you through your adventure.

Page 56



List of Trainers to Battle

The complete list of Pokémon Trainers you meet throughout your adventure. It also covers people who give you items.

Page 23



Pokémon Form Changes and Special Evolutions

Pokémon that change their Forme, such as Giratina and Shaymin, as well as Pokémon that evolve under special conditions, such as Magnezone and Leafeon.

Page 247







Index

The index lists page references for important people and items, including TMs and HMs. It's a quick way to find the information you're looking for.

Page 253









There are many different kinds of Pokémon

Pokémon are strange and wondrous creatures whose lives are still largely shrouded in mystery. Though many Pokémon live out in fields or under the waves, there are still others who live together in partnership with humans. Nobody knows how many Pokémon there are in all, and new kinds are being discovered all the time.

Pokémon Training



How to obtain Pokémon

To succeed in your adventure, you'll have to partner up with Pokémon and use their powers to help you. So get acquainted with the various ways to obtain Pokémon.

How to obtain Pokémon

Catch wild Pokémon

Most Pokémon inhabit places like fields, caves, and bodies of water. Go discover and catch them.



Get them through story events

You can get Pokémon, Pokémon Eggs, and Pokémon Fossils as the story unfolds, so be sure to talk to townspeople.



Evolve them through battle

As Pokémon build up their strength by battling, some of them will evolve. After evolution, the Pokémon's name and appearance will change.



Link Trade with friends

Some Pokémon are especially hard to obtain. The easiest way to get them is by trading with a friend.



Where to find wild Pokémon

Wild Pokémon love nature, and their habitats include tall grass, caves, desert, wetlands, lakes, rivers, etc. Be sure to walk around when you come across such areas, and see what kinds of Pokémon you can find!

These are major areas where you find Pokémon



















How to catch wild Pokémon

Pokémon Training



You can't catch wild Pokémon without a Poké Ball. Even if you have one, Pokémon won't just hop into a Poké Ball. They can be hard to catch unless you tire them out first. Try these three tips!



Wild Double Battles in the dark grass

Starting with Route 3, you'll notice some dark grass here and there. In these areas, two wild Pokémon can attack you at once. If you want to catch one of them, you have to defeat the other first.

Use the right Poké Ball

From the basic model to the Luxury Ball and Master Ball, there are 14 different kinds of Poké Balls, each specialized for a certain use. Always use a Poké Ball that's effective for the kind of Pokémon you want to catch—it's a basic Pokémoncatching principle.



Tips for catching Pokémon



Reduce HP

A Pokémon's HP is a measure of how tired it is. Once HP reaches zero, that Pokémon faints. When you try to catch a Pokémon, use moves to attack and lower HP as much as possible without making it faint. When the HP bar is red, it means that Pokémon is weak. Try throwing a Poké Ball!



Watchog

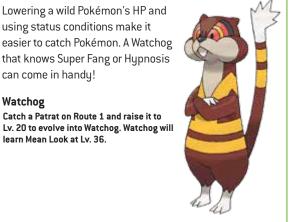
Adventure Info

can come in handy!

Catch a Patrat on Route 1 and raise it to Lv. 20 to evolve into Watchog. Watchog will learn Mean Look at Lv. 36.

Lowering a wild Pokémon's HP and

using status conditions make it



Inflict status conditions

Some Pokémon moves inflict status conditions on their targets (p. 32). A Pokémon saddled with a status condition, such as Poison or Paralysis, is easier to catch. Of the six status conditions, Sleep and Frozen are the most effective. Lower the target's HP and use status conditions to maximize your chances of success.



Examples of moves good for catching Pokémon

Teach your party useful

Pokémon-catching moves

Super Fang	Normal	It cuts the target's HP to half.
Hypnosis	Psychic	It makes the target fall into a deep sleep.
Mean Look	Normal	The target becomes unable to flee.



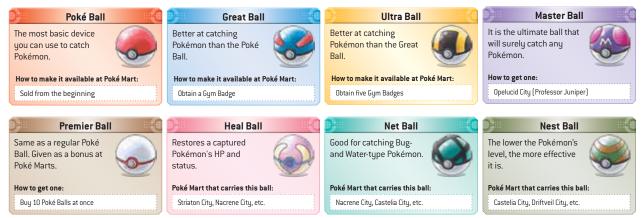
Use the right Poké Ball for each Pokémon



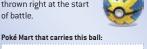
Pokémon Black and Pokémon White have a total of 14 different Poké Ball types. Each Poké Ball's special effects depend on factors such as Pokémon type or the location of the battle. Learn the best uses for each Poké Ball and use the right one for the Pokémon you're aiming to catch.

Poké Balls available in the Unova region

Pokémon Training





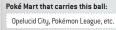






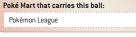
The more turns that have gone by in battle, the more effective it is.

Timer Ball





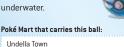




Repeat Ball

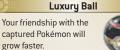


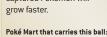
Good for catching Pokémon that live

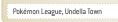












Adventure Info

Obtain a second Master Ball!

The Master Ball is the ultimate ball that can catch any Pokémon. Normally, you can only obtain one throughout your adventure. But you can obtain a second Master Ball on the second floor in the Pokémon Center at Castelia City when you've traded Pokémon with 50 different people.



<u>Pokémon grow stronger as they battle</u>

Pokémon grow strong as they battle. Winning a battle gives them Experience Points. When they gain enough points, they'll level up and their stats—Attack, HP, etc.—will increase. Let

them battle to help them grow stronger.





- Your Pokémon will gain more Experience Points if it defeats a Pokémon whose level is higher than its level.
- Your Pokémon will gain less Experience Points if it defeats a Pokémon whose level is lower than its level.

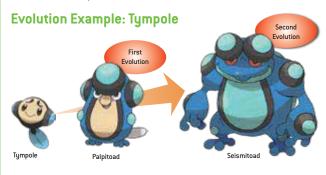






Pokémon Training

Some Pokémon can evolve into new Pokémon with different names. There are several ways to evolve Pokémon, but the most basic method is through battling and earning Experience Points to level up.



Other key evolution methods

Use special stones

Special stones, such as the Thunderstone or Leaf Stone, have the power to trigger Pokémon evolution instantly.



Link Trade

Some Pokémon evolve when they're traded through Link Trade.



Strengthen your friendship

Take good care of a Pokémon, and it will reward you by growing. Some Pokémon evolve if they level up while they're on friendly terms with



Fulfill certain conditions

Some Pokémon can be evolved under special conditions, such as trading two specific Pokémon, or leveling a Pokémon up at a certain place.



Pokémon can learn various moves

Pokémon can learn all kinds of moves, which are useful both in battle and on your adventure in general. There are more than 500 different moves, each with its own unique effects. If you put some thought into developing move sets, your Pokémon will stand out as an individual.



Three fundamental kinds of moves

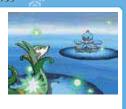
Attack Moves

These moves do damage by attacking the enemy. There are many variations on the basic attack move. Some moves also inflict status conditions.



Defense Moves

When your opponent has you in a tight spot, defense moves are a good idea. These moves can restore HP or cure status conditions. Some defense moves even leech an opponent's HP.



Status Moves

These moves strengthen the user or weaken an opponent. They can do anything from raising a Pokémon's stats to inflicting status conditions that gradually drain an opponent's HP.



How to teach new moves to Pokémon

Pokémon Training

Level them up

Pokémon can learn various moves at predetermined levels. Once they reach a certain level, they can learn the appropriate move.



Use an HM

Each HM (Hidden Machine) is programmed with a special move (p. 27). An HM can teach that move to an unlimited number of Pokémon.



Use a TM

ATM (Technical Machine) can teach a certain move to an unlimited number of Pokémon. You can use the same TM again and again on different Pokémon.



Have an expert teach them

During your travels, you'll meet people who can teach moves to Pokémon. There are seven moves that can be learned this way.





Pokémon have different Abilities

Each Pokémon species has various Abilities. For instance, Patrat can have the Run Away or Keen Eye Ability. Some Abilities take effect during battle, while other Abilities come in handy as you explore the region.



Triggered Abilities are visible

When a Pokémon's Ability is triggered in battle, messages appear for both your Pokémon and your opponent's . Pokémon.

Examples of Abilities and their effects

Pickup

May pick up an item while it's in your party. The Pokémon's level determines what items you're likely to find.



Lillipup



Sturdy

When its HP is full, it'll retain 1 HP if hit bu a move that would knock it out.





Sheer Force

Moves will have no additional effects (such as stat changes), but the power of those moves will increase by 30%.



Timburr, Druddigon, etc.

Items obtained with the Pickup Ability

Item			Level	of Pok	émon	with P	ickup.	Ability		
iteiii	Low								\longrightarrow	High
Potion	0									
Antidote	0	0								
Super Potion	0	0	0							
Great Ball	0	0	0	0						
Repel	0	0	0	0	0					
Escape Rope	0	0	0	0	0	0				
Full Heal	0	0	0	0	0	0	0			
Hyper Potion	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		
Ultra Ball	Δ	Δ	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Revive		Δ	Δ	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Rare Candy			Δ	Δ	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sun Stone				Δ	Δ	0	0	0	0	0
Moon Stone					Δ	Δ	0	0	0	0
Heart Scale						Δ	Δ	0	0	0
Full Restore			A	A			Δ	Δ	0	0
Max Revive								Δ	Δ	0
PP Up									Δ	Δ
Max Elixir										Δ
Nugget	A	A								
King's Rock		A	A							
Ether				A	A					
Iron Ball					•	A				
Prism Scale						A	A	A	A	A
Elixir							A	A		
Leftovers									A	A

Often found ○ Sometimes found △ Rarely found ▲ Almost never found





Pokémon and Trainers become friends

Friendship is the bond of affection and trust that can grow between a Pokémon and its Trainer. Keep a Pokémon happy and it will grow to like you, but a mistreated Pokémon will take a real dislike to you.

Pokémon Training



How to improve your friendship with your Pokémon

Give it the Soothe Bell

A Pokémon who holds the Soothe Bell can be befriended more quickly than usual.



Let it join your party

Putting a Pokémon in your party and walking around will strengthen the friendship between you.



🕒 Level it up

When a Pokémon battles to level up, it becomes friendlier.



Battle Gym Leaders with it

When a Pokémon participates in important battles such as the ones against Gym Leaders, it becomes friendlier.



Take your Pokémon to Nimbasa City, home of the Pokémon Musical, and let it show off up on stage!



Teach a new move with TM

Teach a new move with a TM and your Pokémon will become friendly.



items on it

If you use items to boost base stats on a Pokémon, such as Protein and Iron, your friendship will go up.



Use items on it during battles

If you use items during battles such as X Attack and X Accuracy, your friendship will go up.



🔁 Feed Berries to Pokémon

If you feed Berries such as Pomeg Berry or Grepa Berry to your Pokémon, your friendship will



Give Sweet Hearts to

Another effective way to increase friendship is to do a Feeling Check to receive Sweet Hearts and give them to your



Things that annoy your Pokémon



When it is defeated and faints in a battle, your friendship will go down.



📀 Medicinal herbs

When you use bitter medicinal herbs such as EnergyPowder and Heal Powder, your friendship will go down.

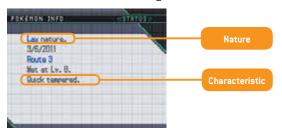




Pokémon have a Nature and a Characteristic



Each individual Pokémon has its own Nature and Characteristic. Depending on the Pokémon, these qualities will affect how its stats increase. Before you start training a Pokémon, check its Nature and Characteristic so that you can make the most of its strongest stats.



How Pokémon Natures affect stat growth

_					
Nature	Attack	Defense	Speed	Sp. Attack	Sp. Defense
Hardy					
Lonely	0	A			
Brave	0		A		
Adamant	0			A	
Naughty	0				A
Bold	A	0			
Docile					
Relaxed		0	A		
Impish		0		A	
Lax		0			A
Timid	A		0		
Hasty		A	0		
Serious					
Jolly			0	A	
Naive			0		A
Modest	A			0	
Mild		A		0	
Quiet			A	0	
Bashful					
Rash				0	A
Calm	A				0
Gentle		A			0
Sassy			A		0
Careful				A	0
Quirky					

Gains more upon leveling up A Gains less upon leveling up

How Pokémon Characteristics affect stat growth

Pokémon Training

HP grows most	Attack grows most	Defense grows most	Speed grows most	Sp. Attack grows most	Sp. Defense grows most
Loves to eat.	Proud of its power.	Sturdy body.	Likes to run.	Highly curious.	Strong willed.
Often dozes off.	Likes to thrash about.	Capable of taking hits.	Alert to sounds.	Mischievous.	Somewhat vain.
Often scatters things.	A little quick tempered.	Highly persistent.	Impetuous and silly.	Thoroughly cunning.	Strongly defiant.
Scatters things often.	Likes to fight.	Good endurance.	Somewhat of a clown.	Often lost in thought.	Hates to lose.
Likes to relax.	Quick tempered.	Good perseverance.	Quick to flee.	Very finicky.	Somewhat stubborn.

See page 32 for Pokémon stats



Some moves can be used as field moves

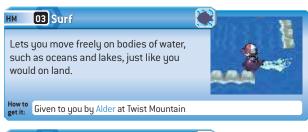
Some Pokémon moves can be used in the field to open up areas you couldn't reach before.

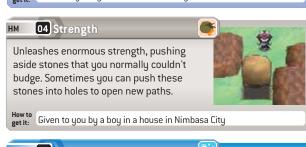


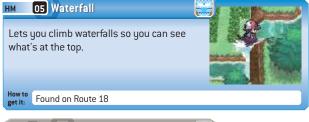
Field move examples

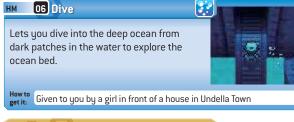


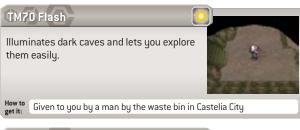


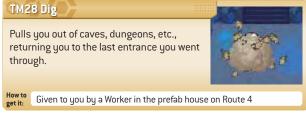


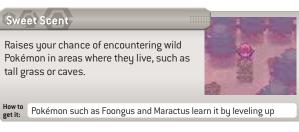














Track Pokémon by following the phenomena

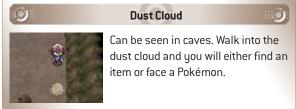
Some of the Unova region Pokémon can be found by noticing certain phenomena in the field. There are four such special phenomena: rustling grass, dust cloud, flying Pokémon's shadow, and rippling water. Many of these Pokémon can only be caught when these phenomena appear. If you notice one of these, hurry to investigate—and catch those Pokémon!

Special places where certain Pokémon appear

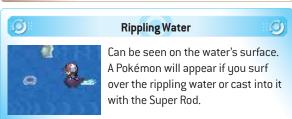
Pokémon Training

Phenomena start to appear after you obtain the first Gym Badge.









The Unova region Pokémon that appear only at special places







(O)

Basculin

Rippling Water (Water Surface)





Defeat Audino and gain lots of Experience Points

Pokémon Training

Basculin

Audino found in rustling grass is a very good choice to help raise your Pokémon's level, because Audino gives much more Experience Points than many other Pokémon. Watch for rustling grass along routes such as 1 and 2 to find Audino—and if you beat an Audino of a higher level than your Pokémon, you can gain even more Experience Points!



(Adventure Info) Some signs may give you items instead

Two of the four special phenomena (dust cloud and flying Pokémon's shadow) may give you items instead. Each Gem will boost the power of a corresponding move just once in a battle when held by a Pokémon. Wings raise Pokémon's base stats. These items are hard to find, so be sure to investigate the dust clouds and shadows whenever you see them!

Items found in caves

△ Rarely found ▲ Almost never found

Chance of discovery	Poison Gem	Chance of discovery
Δ	Psychic Gem	Δ
Δ	Rock Gem	Δ
Δ	Steel Gem	Δ
Δ	Water Gem	Δ
Δ	Dawn Stone	A
Δ	Dusk Stone	A
Δ	Fire Stone	A
Δ	Leaf Stone	A
Δ	Moon Stone	A
Δ	Oval Stone	A
Δ	Shiny Stone	A
Δ	Sun Stone	A
Δ	Thunderstone	A
Δ	Water Stone	A
	discovery	discovery

Items found on bridges

Item	Chance of discovery
Clever Wing	0
Genius Wing	0
Health Wing	0
Muscle Wing	0
Resist Wing	0
Swift Wing	0
Pretty Wing	Δ

 \bigcirc Sometimes found \triangle Rarely found

























Pokémon Training

After finishing the main story, you can visit areas that were inaccessible before in places such as Route 13 and Undella Town. You'll find Pokémon from other regions in those new areas. You can even catch Dragonite, Tyranitar, and Milotic, which were not available in the wild in previous titles—the only way to obtain them was through evolution!





Pokémon can be classified into 17 types, such as Normal, Fire, Water, or Grass. The matchups between these types are a key factor in determining a battle's outcome.

Examples of the 17 Pokémon types



































Both Pokémon and their moves have types. This Tepig is typical of most Pokémon. Although it belongs to the Fire type, it learns moves from other types as well.



The move's type is used when attacking

When Tepig attacks Pidove with Head Smash, look at Head Smash's type—the Rock type.

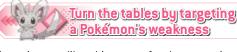


The Pokémon's type is used when defending

When Pidove attacks Tepig, look at Tepig's type—the Fire type.



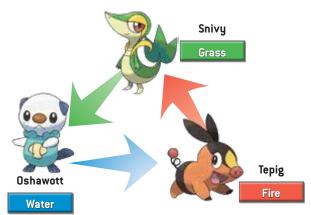






Types interact like a big game of rock-paper-scissors. For instance, Water is strong against Fire, but weak against Grass. If the attacking Pokémon's move type is strong against the defending Pokémon's type, the move does increased damage.

Types have good and bad matchups



Good type matchups mean increased damage!



Bad type matchups mean reduced damage...



<u>Use types to increase</u> attack damage



Under the right conditions, your moves will do at least 50% more damage than usual. If you can keep dishing out that kind of damage, victory is sure to be within your reach. Several factors determine these increases in attack damage, but the three major ones are listed below.

How to increase damage

Use moves of the same type as the user

When a Pokémon uses moves of its own type, those moves inflict 50% more damage.



Use moves that the target is weak against

A move does double damage when used on a Pokémon who's weak against that move's type.



Critical hits

If the move scores a critical hit, it does double the damage.





Battle messages describe damage range

Message	Matchup	Damage
It's super effective!	Good	2–4 times damage
It's not very effective	Fair	Half damage or less
(No message)	Normal	Regular damage
It doesn't affect	Bad	No damage
A critical hit!	_	2 times damage







Overall strength is the product of six stats



Each Pokémon's overall strength depends on individual statistics, such as Attack or Defense. Six different stats indicate a Pokémon's proficiency in different areas. To raise a strong Pokémon, you'll need to understand how each stat works.

Pokémon Training

The six stats



The Pokémon's health. If attacks reduce its HP to 0, the Pokémon

Stats affecting physical moves



The higher this stat is, the more damage the Pokémon does with physical moves.

Defense

The higher this stat is, the less damage the Pokémon takes from physical moves.



Speed

The Pokémon's attack speed The higher the number, the more likely the Pokémon will

Stats affecting special moves

Sp. Attack

The higher this stat is, the more damage the Pokémon does with special moves.

Sp. Defense

The higher this stat is, the less damage the Pokémon takes from special moves.



Stats also affect the three kinds of moves



Moves belong to one of three kinds—physical, special, or status. There's an important connection between these kinds of moves and a Pokémon's stats. For instance, a Pokémon with high Attack will do the most damage if it uses physical moves.

The three kinds of moves

Physical

Physical moves are ones like Retaliate and Low Sweep. Most of these moves make direct contact with the opponent.



Special

Special moves are ones like Scald and Incinerate. Most of these moves don't bring the user into direct contact with the target.





Status

Moves like the weather-changing Rain Dance or moves that alter a user's or target's stats are considered status moves.





of battle.

Use status conditions to gain an advantage

Pokémon can be affected by status conditions such as Sleep, Poison, or Paralysis. These conditions can immobilize a Pokémon or eat away at its HP. Hit the other Pokémon with moves that inflict status conditions, and you'll turn the tide



physical changes



Status condition examples

Poison

Pokémon Training

Target's HP decreases each turn. This condition does not wear off on its own.

Effect Lowers the opponent's HP

Burned

Lowers Attack, and HP decreases each turn. This condition does not wear off on its own.

Lowers the opponent's HP, slightly weakens the opponent's attacks

Frozen

Target is unable to attack. This condition may wear off when the affected Pokémon tries to attack.

Prevents the opponent from attacking, lets you attack with impunity

Paralysis

Lowers Speed, and each turn there's a 25% chance that the Pokémon can't attack. This condition does not wear off on its own.

Effect Prevents the opponent from attacking, lets you strike first

Sleep

Target is unable to attack*. This condition wears off after several turns.

Prevents the opponent from attacking*, lets you attack with impunity

Confused

Target will sometimes attack itself. This condition wears off after several turns.

Prevents the opponent from attacking, lowers the opponent's HP



Make good use of your Pokémon's Abilities

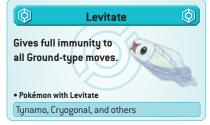
Abilities are special qualities that all Pokémon possess, and each Pokémon species has its own special Abilities. Some Abilities' effects are used in the field, but most Abilities grant you an advantage in battle. Some are triggered by the opponent's attack. Learn their effects and how to effectively combine them with moves.



Abilities can tip the odds in your favor

Examples of Abilities that are helpful in battle







Give Pokémon items to hold

Each Pokémon can hold a single item. Some held items have an effect in battle, and you can make them a key part of your strategy. The Scope Lens, for instance, boosts the holder's critical-hit ratio so the chance of dealing double damage is increased.



 $[\]ensuremath{^{*}}\textsc{Moves}$ like Sleep Talk and Snore are exceptions to this rule.



Examples of useful held items



Quick Claw

Allows user to strike first sometimes



BrightPowder

Raises evasion



Scope Lens

Eviolite

Boosts the holder's critical-hit ratio

Pokémon that can still evolve



Amulet Coin

Doubles the prize money if the holding Pokémon is brought into battle



Rocky Helmet

The attacker will also be damaged on contact



Weather affects how battles go

Raises the Defense and Sp. Defense by 50% for a

You'll experience different weather conditions in some areas of the Unova region. The weather conditions not only change the appearance of areas but also affect Pokémon battles.



The four weather conditions



When the weather condition is Rain, the power of Water-type moves goes up and the power of Fire-type moves goes down.



Sandstorm

When the weather condition is Sandstorm, each Pokémon takes damage every turn except Ground-, Rock-, and Steel-type Pokémon.



Hail

When the weather condition is Hail, each Pokémon takes damage every turn except Ice-type Pokémon.



When the weather is Sunny, the power of Fire-type moves goes up and the power of Water-type moves goes down.



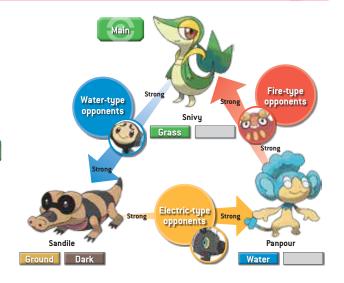
Build a strong team that covers its weak points

Every Pokémon type has its weaknesses. If you fill your team with just one type, then it only takes one supereffective move type to put your entire party at risk. Instead, try building a team with Pokémon whose strengths and weaknesses cover for each other, allowing you to take on any Pokémon you encounter.



Example: Building a team around Snivy

Snivy is weak against Fire-type moves. That's why you want Panpour, a Pokémon who's strong against Fire-type Pokémon. However, Panpour is weak against Electric-type Pokémon, so add Sandile for its advantage over Electric types. Water types that have the upper hand against Sandile are at a disadvantage against Snivy.





Example: Building a team around Tepig

Tepig is weak against Water-type moves. That's why you want Pansage, a Pokémon who's strong against Water-type Pokémon. However, Pansage is weak against Flying-type Pokémon, so add Roggenrola for its advantage over Flying types. Grass types that have the upper hand against Roggenrola are at a disadvantage against Tepig.





Example: Building a team around Oshawott

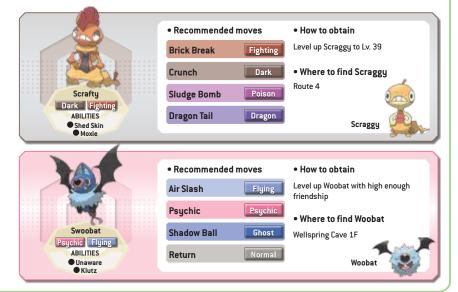
Oshawott is weak against Grass-type moves. That's why you want Pansear, a Pokémon who's strong against Grass-type Pokémon. However, Pansear is weak against Ground-type Pokémon, so add Sewaddle for its advantage over Ground types. Fire types that have the upper hand against Sewaddle are at a disadvantage against Oshawott.



Adventure Info Raise Pokémon of other types to prepare for the tougher battles that lie ahead

Tough battles—such as the ones against the Elite Four and N-await you at the end of your adventure. You'll want to take advantage of the weakness of their Pokémon, but the Elite Four's Pokémon are of various types. You'll have a tough time challenging them if you raise only a few Pokémon. Here are some Pokémon that have effective moves against the Elite Four's Pokémon.

Effective Pokémon against the Elite Four





Adventure Info Pansage, Pansear, and Panpour can be quite helpful

The Pansage, Pansear, or Panpour you receive in the Dreamyard can be quite a helpful addition to your party. It would be a waste to stop training them after your Striaton City Gym battle. These three evolve with special stones, but they won't learn moves by leveling up once they are evolved. You should let them learn useful moves before they evolve.

A good way to raise Pansage

Pokémon Training

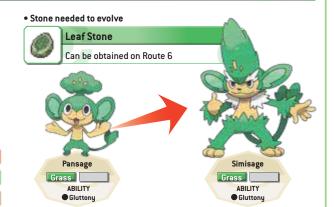
These moves are especially useful for Pansage. Leech Seed is a move that plants a seed on the target to steal some HP every turn. SolarBeam is another move to turn to, as it is one of the strongest Grass-type moves. Its power is as high as 120. Usually, SolarBeam requires an extra turn to charge up, but if the weather is Sunny, it can be used immediately.

• Recommended moves to learn by leveling up

Leech Seed	Grass Lv. 16
Seed Bomb	Grass Lv. 22
Torment	Dark Lv. 25
Crunch	Dark Lv. 43

· Recommended moves to learn with TM

Sunny Day	Fire
SolarBeam	Grass
Rock Tomb	Rock



A good way to raise Pansear

A move that stands out among the moves Pansear can learn is Flame Burst. It can damage adjacent Pokémon in Double and Triple Battles. Another good move is Incinerate. It burns up any Berry held by the target, so you can spoil your opponent's strategy.

• Recommended moves to learn by leveling up

Yawn	Normal Lv. 16
Flame Burst	Fire Lv. 22
Amnesia	Psychic Lv. 25
Crunch	Dark Lv. 43

 Recommended moves to learn with TM

Will-O-Wisp	Fire
Grass Knot	Grass
Fire Blast	Fire

Stone needed to evolve Fire Stone

Stone needed to evolve



A good way to raise Panpour

Here are some moves that are especially useful for Panpour. Scald, unlike other typical Water-type moves, can cause a Burn. Your opponents will surely be caught off guard when you use this move. The move Blizzard can turn the tables. When Panpour faces Grass-type Pokémon that have the upper hand against it, you can use this advantageous move to double the damage.

• Recommended moves to learn by leveling up

Scald	Water Lv. 22
Taunt	Dark Lv. 25
Brine	Water Lv. 34
Crunch	Dark Lv. 43

• Recommended moves to learn

Dig	Ground
Double Team	Normal
Blizzard	Ice







You will receive a Pansage, Pansear, or Panpour in the Dreamyard, but you can also catch wild ones in Pinwheel Forest and Lostlorn Forest. Look for them in the rustling grass (page 28). Catch all three for their great support and to complete the Unova Pokédex.



Appears in Pinwheel Forest and Lostlorn Forest rustling grass







Adventure Info Raise Pokémon using the Lucky Egg or Exp. Share in the new region

It is important to raise not only your primary Pokémon, but also the support Pokémon in Pokémon Black and Pokémon White. But it is hard to raise other Pokémon when you are busy raising the main Pokémon. Here is a way to raise your team effectively with useful items such as Lucky Egg and Exp. Share.

Lucky Egg

Gain more Experience Points than usual

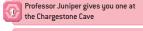


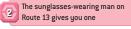
Lucky Egg is an item that gives 50% more Experience Points than usual. It is most effective if you let the lead Pokémon hold it.





How to obtain Lucky Egg







Raise multiple Pokémon at once. Exp. Share

When you have a Pokémon hold Exp. Share, it can gain Experience Points without battling as long as it's in your party.





How to obtain Exp. Share

Defeat a Janitor at the Battle Company in Castelia City



When one Exp. Share is held (and the levels of the Pokémon are

The Experience Point distribution is shown when the lead Pokémon holds a Lucky Egg and a Pokémon in your party holds an Exp. Share.



When two Exp. Shares are held (and the levels of the Pokémon are

The distribution is shown when the lead Pokémon holds a Lucky Egg and two Pokémon in your party each hold an Exp. Share.











How to use the game menus

Throughout your journey, you can press the X Button to show the main menu on the Touch Screen. Once you learn what the different options are and what information they contain, you'll have no problem finding your way.

Pokémon Training

Menu screen



Communication Features

Communication features currently being used or available are shown.

Current time

Shows the current time, according to the clock feature of the Nintendo DS.



Nintendo DS battery level

The mini-scale graph of the Nintendo DS battery status is shown.



Using the game functions

1 Pokémon

Displays the Pokémon currently in your party. You can also access detailed info on each.

2 Pokédex

A device that records Pokémon data, including how many you've seen and caught.

3 Bag

Stores the items you've collected. Open it to use the items inside.

4 Trainer Info

Shows how far you've come as a Trainer. You can check which Gym Badges have been obtained and other data.

5 Save

Tap here to save your game. Be sure to save often.

6 Options

Adjust the gameplay options to your liking.





Tap "POKÉMON" on the menu to see a list of your current party Pokémon. You can also view more info about your Pokémon or use field moves, such as Fly or Flash. To use these field moves, just select a Pokémon, then the move.

What you can do with the party Pokémon screen

SUMMARY

Shows where you caught the Pokémon, its moves, its stats, and more.

SWITCH

Move a Pokémon around in your lineup. The top-left is the first Pokémon and the top-right is the second Pokémon to join a battle.

ITEM

Lets you give a Pokémon an item to hold or take away its held item.

FIELD MOVE

Lets your Pokémon use a field move, such as Fly or Flash.



Check Pokémon data under Summary

Pokémon Training

Three screens of Pokémon data

From the party Pokémon screen, choose "SUMMARY" to view a Pokémon's info. There are three separate pages of info.

Trainer Memo and Info on the Pokémon



The top screen shows the Pokémon's Nature, Characteristic, and more General information is on the lower screen.



Stats and Battle Moves

The top screen shows the Pokémon's stats and its Ability. The lower screen shows the moves it knows.



Boy's Pokédex

Only for the Pokémon transferred with Poké Transfer (p. 205). The lower screen shows any Ribbons it has earned.





Girl's Pokédex

The Pokédex is the device that automatically records Pokémon data. Whenever you encounter a Pokémon in the field or in a Trainer battle, it's added to your list of Pokémon seen. Once you catch it, it's added to your list of Pokémon obtained.

Pokédex screen



The number of Pokémon seen and Pokémon obtained

Pokémon List

Icon to show it has been obtained

When you've caught or obtained a Pokémon through trade, it'll be registered in your Pokédex and the Poké Ball icon is

You can narrow down the Pokémon you are looking for by Pokédex number, name, type, and more.

Switches between the Unova Pokédex and National Pokédex (after you've obtained the National Pokédex)

How Pokédex entries are registered



a certain Pokémon species, there's nothing but a blank space reserved for it and its Pokédex number.





When you see a Pokémon, its name and appearance are added to the Pokédex. Tap "AREA" and its habitat is also displayed.





Once you catch a Pokémon, the Pokédex records its type, size, description, and more. The Pokédex entry is now complete.



Tap "FORMS" to check gender and form differences. You can also check Shiny Pokémon you've obtained.





Your Bag is where you store the items you collect on your journey. You'll have it from the beginning of your adventure. For your convenience, items are automatically sorted into one of five Cases inside it.

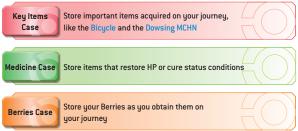


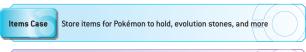
Store your TMs and HMs



Items in your Bag are sorted into one of five Cases

Pokémon Training





The Ready function of the Y Button

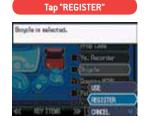
Register frequently used items

TMs & HMs

Case



Some of the Key Items can be assigned to the Y Button, also known as the Ready button, for quick access. This is a very useful feature. Six Key Items can be assigned, including the Bicycle and the Dowsing MCHN.





◆ 🌀 🌖 You can also register frequently used screens

There is more to the Y Button than registering Key Items. You can also register screens for quick access, as long as they have a box to check in the bottom-right corner, such as the Pokédex and individual Cases of your Bag.





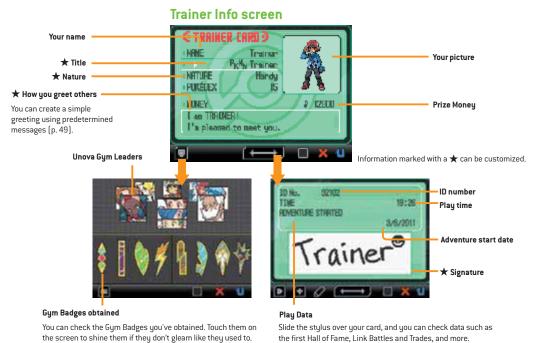




Trainer Info

Pokémon Training

Trainer Info covers your Trainer Card and Gym Badges. Tap the icon labeled with your name to access it at any time. Your Trainer Card records lots of information, so don't forget to check it out!



Trainer Card Features

Tap to customize

You can personalize the information on your Trainer Card by tapping it. Remember that the information is viewed through Tag Mode and the Union Room.



Your Trainer Card gets upgrades

After you've finished the main story or meet a certain condition, your Trainer Card is upgraded from the Normal Rank, Green, to the Bronze Rank, Purple. There are a total of five Ranks, and your Trainer Card gets upgraded every time you meet certain conditions.







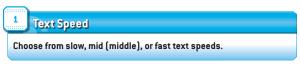
The Options menu lets you adjust game settings to suit your own preferences, making it easier to play. For instance, if the game text scrolls by too slowly, you can increase the message speed. If there's a gameplay feature you want to change, open the Options menu and change it to your liking.

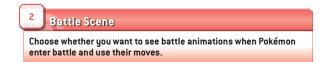
The Options menu

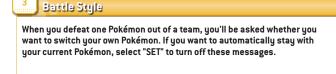


What you can do with the Options menu

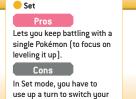
Pokémon Training





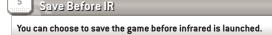






Pokémon after beating one.







<u>Get a handle on using these handy items</u>



There are lots of items that are especially useful on your journey. You can ride the Bicycle and zip from place to place. Use the Dowsing MCHN (Dowsing Machine) to sniff out hidden items and more! Several of these incredibly useful items are highlighted below. Try to use them all.



It's the map of the entire Unova region including its cities, towns, routes, caves, and bridges. Places you've visited are shown in gray, and they will turn blue as you visit them. You can also see your current position. Touch the "+" icon to magnify.



Tap places and you can see what's there, too.

Tap the cities and towns on the lower screen, and you'll see what's there on the top screen.

• How to obtain the Town Map

Your mom gives it to you in Nuvema Town



Xtransceiver

A high-tech transceiver with a camera function. It allows up to four-way calls. The color differs between male and female Trainers. You can communicate with various people including your friends and Professor Juniper at important moments in the game.



Your friends give you useful information

It's a useful item that enables you to talk to your friends, Professor Juniper, and your mom face to face

· How to obtain the Xtransceiver

Your mom gives it to you in Nuvema Town

Dowsing MCHN

It can detect items that are hidden in forests and caves. Follow the arrow shown on the lower screen and check where it blinks for a hidden item.

Pokémon Training



It's like a treasure hunt!

You cannot pick up an item if you are standing right on top of it. Step aside, face the spot where you were, then press the A Button.

• How to obtain the Dowsing MCHN

Bianca gives it to you in Nacrene City



Bicycle

The Bicycle lets you travel even faster than the Running Shoes allow. It's a good idea to register it to the Y Button as soon as you get it (p. 40). Zip through towns, routes, and bridges with it.



Faster than running...usually

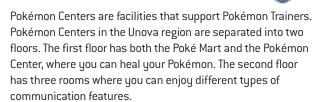
The Bicycle is usually the faster way to get around, but it gets bogged down in sand. When you're in places like the Desert Resort, you're better off just walking.

How to obtain the Bicycle

After you defeat Team Plasma in Nimbasa City, the Day-Care Man gives it to you









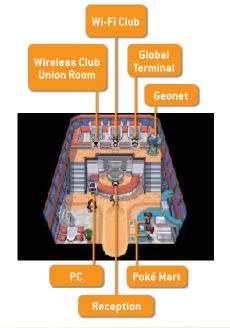
Geonet is a globe that lets you register where you live. At the Global Terminal, you can set up trades and battles with Trainers all over the world. Trade or battle with friends with whom you've exchanged Friend Codes at the Wi-Fi Club. Enjoy a variety of activities with the people who have entered the same room in the Union Room.

Pokémon Center

If you speak to the person at the Pokémon Center's reception counter, your Pokémon's HP, PP, and status conditions will be healed for free. Use the PC on the left side of the counter to deposit or withdraw Pokémon to take on your adventure, or organize your items. Also, use Help to read detailed, illustrated explanations of how to play the game.



In Pokémon Black and Pokémon White, the Poké Mart is no longer a separate facility. You'll find it right inside the door of every Pokémon Center. Now you can heal your Pokémon and buy items in the same place!



Poké Mart

get more Gym Badges, the selection at the Poké

Mart grows even better.

There are two clerks:

The Poké Mart is a shop Poloe Ball inside the Pokémon 12800 cat Ball Center that sells a tra Ball variety of useful goods otion uper Potion for adventures. As you ar Potion

> device for catching wild Pokénon. It is thrown like a ball at the target. It is designed as a payoule system.

s Potion

The upper clerk sells the same goods in every town, and the lower clerk sells products unique to the city you're in.





F700

#1200

02900

Items sold at the Poké Mart (and conditions for sale)

Pokémon Training

		•	•
Item	Price	Condition	Explanation
Antidote	100	•	Cures Poison.
Parlyz Heal	200	-	Cures Paralysis.
Poké Ball	200	_	An item for capturing wild Pokémon.
Awakening	250	0	Cures Sleep.
Burn Heal	250	•	Cures Burn.
Ice Heal	250	•	Defrosts a Pokémon that has been frozen solid.
Potion	300	_	Restores the HP of one Pokémon by 20 points.
Repel	350	•	Prevents weak wild Pokémon from appearing for 100 steps after its use.
Super Repel	500	A	Prevents weak wild Pokémon from appearing for 200 steps after its use.
Escape Rope	550	0	Escape instantly from a cave or a dungeon.
Full Heal	600		Cures all status ailments.
Great Ball	600	•	A Ball that provides a higher Pokémon catch rate than a standard Poké Ball.
Max Repel	700		Prevents weak wild Pokémon from appearing for 250 steps after its use.
Super Potion	700	•	Restores the HP of one Pokémon by 50 points.
Hyper Potion	1,200	A	Restores the HP of one Pokémon by 200 points.
Ultra Ball	1,200		A Ball that provides a higher Pokémon catch rate than a Great Ball.
Revive	1,500	A	Revives a fainted Pokémon and restores half of its HP.
Max Potion	2,500	•	Completely restores the HP of a single Pokémon.
Full Restore	3,000	*	Fully restores the HP and heals any status problems of a single Pokémon.

Purchasing

No mark Sold from the beginning

- After earning one or two Gym Badges
- After earning three or four Gym Badges
- After earning five or six Gym Badges
- After earning six or seven Gym Badges
- 🖈 After earning all eight Gym Badges





The PC is a convenient device where you can deposit Pokémon you've caught, or withdraw them to take them on your adventure. There's one on the first floor of every Pokémon



Center. At the start of your adventure, it's called "Someone's PC," but after you talk to Amanita in Striaton City, the name changes to "Amanita's PC." You'll be using the PC a lot during your adventure, so here's how to do it!

What you can do with Amanita's PC

Deposit Pokémon

Use this when you want to put Pokémon from your party into the PC Box. Also, you can see the status of the selected Pokémon, mark it, or release it.



Withdraw Pokémon

Use this to move Pokémon from your PC Box into your party. To use this function, you need space in your party. If you're already traveling with six Pokémon, you can't take another Pokémon with you, even if you select it.



Move Pokémon

In addition to depositing and withdrawing Pokémon, you can also move Pokémon from one Box to another or swap Pokémon from the Boxes with the ones in your party.



Battle Box

You can move up to six Pokémon from your PC Box that you often use in battles into your Battle Box. When you battle with your friends, you can select whether to use the Pokémon in your Battle Box or the Pokémon in your party.



Move Items

You can organize the items held by your Pokémon. You can give an item a Pokémon is holding to a different Pokémon, or you can put the item back into your Bag.







Use the PC with your name on it to store Mail held by a Pokémon you traded. Access this PC to read your Mail whenever you want. To send Mail when trading Pokémon, you can buy Mail at the Poké Mart and have a Pokémon hold it.

What you can do on your PC

.... Mailbox

Your mailbox saves up to 20 received messages. You can reread or delete saved Mail. Regardless of who sent the Mail saved in your mailbox, you can have your Pokémon hold it.

Pokémon Training



When trading, have your Pokémon hold Mail

When trading with friends and family, give your Pokémon Mail to hold. The recipient will be happy even if it's just a short message.

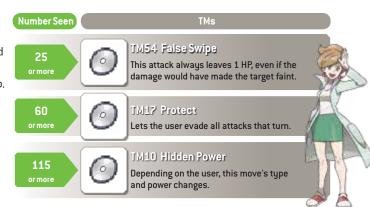




Use the Professor's PC to check the completeness of your Pokédex. The professor will judge how many Pokémon you've seen, and if you've seen more than 150 Pokémon, she will judge the number you've obtained. Consult the Professor's PC for help in completing your Pokédex.

Get TMs from Professor Juniper

Professor Juniper gives you TMs as presents after you've seen a certain number of Pokémon. When the "Number Seen" in your Pokédex reaches this point and you access the Professor's PC, she will tell you she has something for you and ask you to come to the Lab. Go to the Juniper Pokémon Lab in Nuvema Town to receive your gift.







Help shows you important information and images that explain how to enjoy *Pokémon Black* and *Pokémon White*. As you proceed through the story, the content increases.



Conditions for increasing Help content

Displayed from the beginning

After obtaining the C-Gear

After finishing the main story







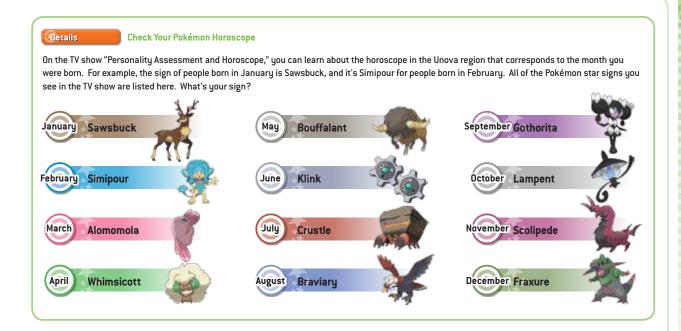


You'll find TVs in houses in every city, and there's even one in your room. Stand in front of the TV and press the A Button to watch whatever's on! TV shows can be divided into three categories: shows about records, lectures, and variety shows. There are 13 different shows in all, offering all kinds of information about the world of Pokémon. Every now and again, take a break and enjoy some TV!



TV Programs and Content

Time and Genre	Program Name	Content
From zero to 9 minutes after the hour	Cartoon	A cartoon about a Pokémon Trainer who has the same name as you! Depending on your gender, the show will be slightly different.
Records		
From 10 to 34 minutes after the hour	Moves for Living	A show that explains moves.
Lecture	The Waving Weaving Walk	A show that explains Abilities.
	What's That?	A show that explains items.
From 35 to 59 minutes after the hour	Personality Assessment and Horoscope	A show with personality assessments based on horoscopes for the Unova region.
Variety	The National Gymquirer	A show where you can hear rumors about the Gym Leaders.
	KOUKAN TALK	A show that teaches helpful Japanese phrases to Pokémon Trainers.
	Eyes on Unova	A program with reports on the Unova region and Trainer interviews.
	Sparkling Musical Moves	A show where you can see Pokémon Musicals.
	PokéQuiz	A quiz show where contestants are quizzed on Japanese Pokémon names.
	Your Pokémon	A show that introduces special Pokémon from around the region.
	Today's Recommended Item	A fantastic TV shopping show.
	Unova News	A news program that brings the latest in Unova region news.



Electric bulletin board



Every gate has an electric bulletin board. When you want to read the announcements on the board, stand in front of it and press the A Button. The announcements on the electric bulletin board can be divided into three types: weather, information, and breaking news. When you start your adventure, be sure to check out the electric bulletin boards when you enter the gates, because they are a great way to get important information about the area you are going to.



Electric Bulletin Board Info

Genre	Program Name	Content
Weather	Date and Weather	When you go from a city with a gate to another city, information about the weather on that route will be displayed.
	Rare Weather	If there is strange weather somewhere, the place where it is happening will be displayed. Also, you can learn where Tornadus or Thundurus is appearing.
Information	Mass Outbreaks	After you finish the main story, a mass outbreak—a large group of Pokémon appearing all at once—will occur somewhere once a day. Information about the mass outbreak location will be displayed.
	Regional Information	Information about the place you are heading will be displayed, matching your progress in the story.
	Advertisements	Commercials for the Poké Mart and Shopping Mall Nine are shown.
Breaking news	News Bulletins	Defeat the Gym Leaders or the Champion through the course of the story and that information will be shown here.





Other things to keep in mind



Wonderful things happen on your birthday

Pokémon Training





greeting changes



List of Trainers

Get a Prop at the Musical Theater

Penalty for losing battles

If all of the Pokemon in your party faint, you will be returned to the Pokémon Center. You'll lose some money when this happens, and the stronger your party is, the more money you will lose when you lose the battle.



e and Seasons



Seasonal changes

The Unova region has four seasons: spring, summer, autumn, and winter. In Icirrus City and Dragonspiral Tower, for example, snow will accumulate during winter. A season in Unova goes by at the beginning of every month in real time. So for instance, autumn is in March and winter is in April. Also, time in the Unova region moves at the same speed as actual time, and each day has periods of morning, afternoon, evening, night, and late night. These times of day change according to the in-game season.

Changes to the scenery in each season (Route 1)



Pink flower petals dance through the sky. Young buds are sprouting on the green trees.



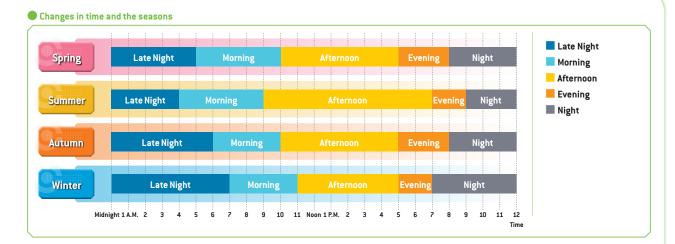
The leaves of the trees have turned a dark, summery green, and yellow flowers dance through



Autumn comes to the Routes, leaves float through the sky, and the trees show brilliant autumn



The ground turns as white as if a cloud had fallen onto the ground. Dried leaves blow through the sky, so everything feels extra wintry.



Communicate with the Easy Chat System



Write by choosing words

The easy chat system is a communication tool that lets you make sentences by combining prepared words and phrases. You can write your profile introduction on your Trainer Card, and write Mail to give to Pokémon to hold. There are many opportunities to use it within the game.





Buy Mail at the Poké Mart

The Poké Mart in each city sells Mail.

If you let a Pokémon hold Mail before trading it, you can send Mail to the person you're trading with. When you are trading Pokémon via the Union Room or the Global Terminal, send a message to the person you're trading with by giving that Pokémon a Mail message to hold. The person who gets the message will surely be pleased.



Enjoy the easy chat system in other places



There are many other situations in *Pokémon Black* and *Pokémon White* where you can use the easy chat system. Use the words listed on the following pages to make fun sentences.

Main places where you can use the easy chat system



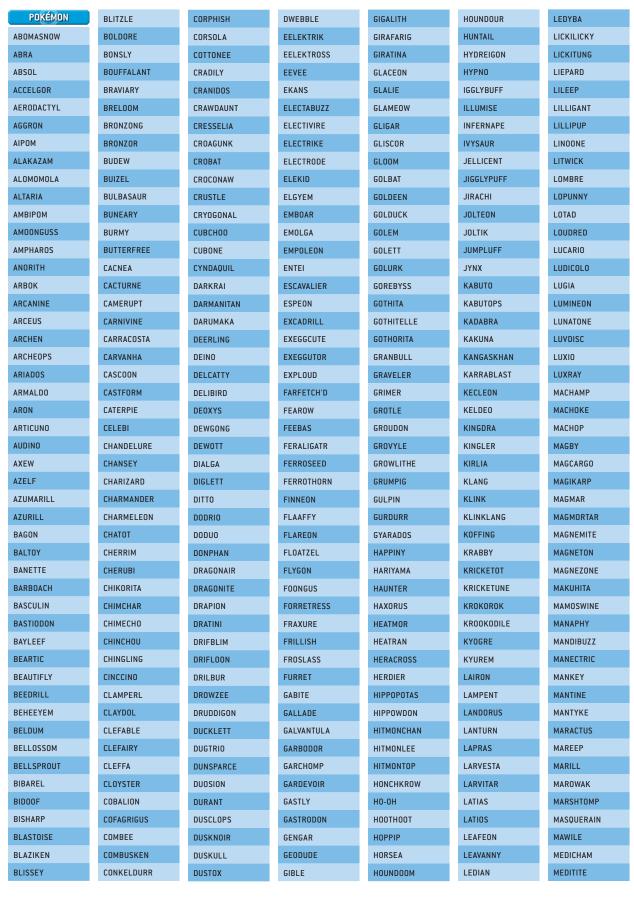




<u>Words you can use in the easy chat system</u>



r	\sim
d	ハ
2	
	רח:
	_
	_
	_
	7
	_
	a e
	\sim
	_
	_
	_
	$\overline{}$
	_
	•
	_
۹	ш
	\smile
	_
	$\overline{}$
	_
	െ
	_
	=
	-
	_
	r
	ш
	_
	~
	_
	~
	_
	ட



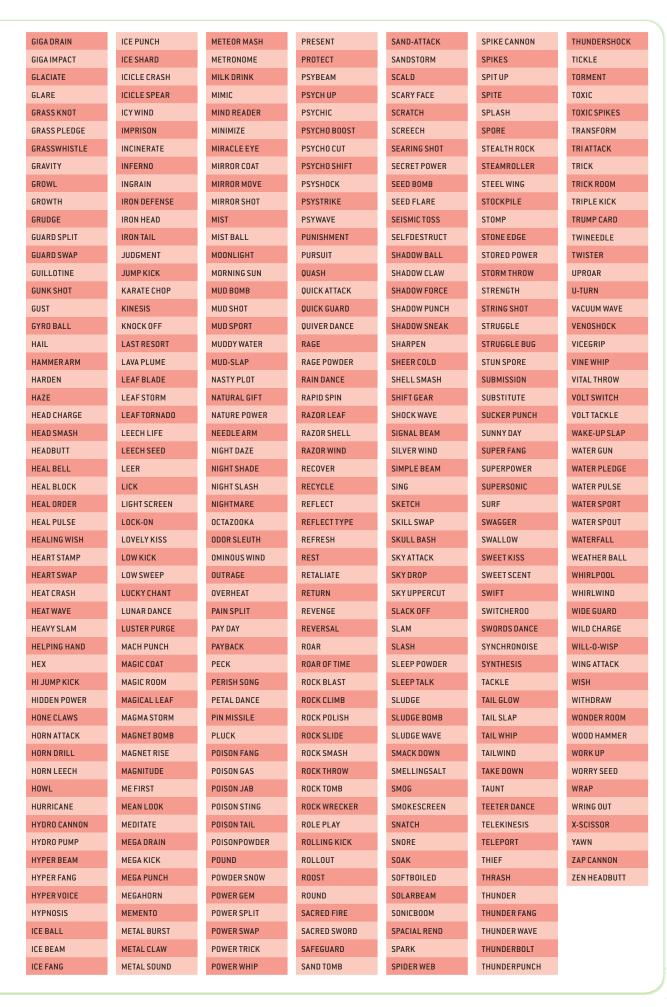


MELOETTA	PANPOUR	REGIGIGAS	SHUCKLE	SWALOT	VESPIQUEN
MEGANIUM	PANSAGE	REGIROCK	SHUPPET	SWAMPERT	VIBRAVA
MEOWTH	PANSEAR	REGISTEEL	SIGILYPH	SWANNA	VICTINI
MESPRIT	PARAS	RELICANTH	SILCOON	SWELLOW	VICTREEBEL
METAGROSS	PARASECT	REMORAID	SIMIPOUR	SWINUB	VIGOROTH
METANG	PATRAT	RESHIRAM	SIMISAGE	SWOOBAT	VILEPLUME
METAPOD	PAWNIARD	REUNICLUS	SIMISEAR	TAILLOW	VIRIZION
MEW	PELIPPER	RHYDON	SKARMORY	TANGELA	VOLBEAT
MEWTW0	PERSIAN	RHYHORN	SKIPLOOM	TANGROWTH	VOLCARONA
MIENF00	PETILIL	RHYPERIOR	SKITTY	TAUROS	VOLTORB
MIENSHAO	PHANPY	RIOLU	SKORUPI	TEDDIURSA	VULLABY
MIGHTYENA	PHIONE	ROGGENROLA	SKUNTANK	TENTACOOL	VULPIX
MILOTIC	PICHU	ROSELIA	SLAKING	TENTACRUEL	WAILMER
MILTANK	PIDGEOT	ROSERADE	SLAKOTH	TEPIG	WAILORD
MIME JR.	PIDGEOTTO	ROTOM	SLOWBRO	TERRAKION	WALREIN
MINCCINO	PIDGEY	RUFFLET	SLOWKING	THROH	WARTORTLE
MINUN	PIDOVE	SABLEYE	SLOWPOKE	THUNDURUS	WATCHOG
MISDREAVUS	PIGNITE	SALAMENCE	SLUGMA	TIMBURR	WEAVILE
MISMAGIUS	PIKACHU	SAMUROTT	SMEARGLE	TIRTOUGA	WEEDLE
MOLTRES	PILOSWINE	SANDILE	SMOOCHUM	TOGEKISS	WEEPINBELL
	PINECO	SANDSHREW	SNEASEL	TOGERI	WEEZING
MONFERNO					
MOTHIM	PINSIR	SANDSLASH	SNIVY	TOGETIC	WHIMSICOTT
MR. MIME	PIPLUP	SAWK	SNORLAX	TORCHIC	WHIRLIPEDE
MUDKIP	PLUSLE	SAWSBUCK	SNORUNT	TORKOAL	WHISCASH
MUK	POLITOED	SCEPTILE	SNOVER	TORNADUS	WHISMUR
MUNCHLAX	POLIWAG	SCIZOR	SNUBBULL	TORTERRA	WIGGLYTUFF
MUNNA	POLIWHIRL	SCOLIPEDE	SOLOSIS	TOTODILE	WINGULL
MURKROW	POLIWRATH	SCRAFTY	SOLROCK	TOXICROAK	WOBBUFFET
MUSHARNA	PONYTA	SCRAGGY	SPEAROW	TRANQUILL	WOOBAT
NATU	POOCHYENA	SCYTHER	SPHEAL	TRAPINCH	WOOPER
NIDOKING	PORYGON	SEADRA	SPINARAK	TREECKO	WORMADAM
NIDOQUEEN	PORYGON2	SEAKING	SPINDA	TROPIUS	WURMPLE
NIDORAN ♀	PORYGON-Z	SEALEO	SPIRITOMB	TRUBBISH	WYNAUT
NIDORAN ♂	PRIMEAPE	SEEDOT	SPOINK	TURTWIG	XATU
NIDORINA	PRINPLUP	SEEL	SQUIRTLE	TYMPOLE	YAMASK
NIDORINO	PROBOPASS	SEISMITOAD	STANTLER	TYNAMO	YANMA
NINCADA	PSYDUCK	SENTRET	STARAPTOR	TYPHLOSION	YANMEGA
NINETALES	PUPITAR	SERPERIOR	STARAVIA	TYRANITAR	ZANGOOSE
NINJASK	PURRLOIN	SERVINE	STARLY	TYROGUE	ZAPDOS
NOCTOWL	PURUGLY	SEVIPER	STARMIE	UMBREON	ZEBSTRIKA
NOSEPASS	QUAGSIRE	SEWADDLE	STARYU	UNFEZANT	ZEKROM
NUMEL	QUILAVA	SHARPEDO	STEELIX	UNOWN	ZIGZAGOON
NUZLEAF	QWILFISH	SHAYMIN	STOUTLAND	URSARING	ZOROARK
OCTILLERY	RAICHU	SHEDINJA	STUNFISK	UXIE	ZORUA
ODDISH	RAIKOU	SHELGON	STUNKY	VANILLISH	ZUBAT
OMANYTE	RALTS	SHELLDER	SUDOWOODO	VANILLITE	ZWEILOUS
OMASTAR	RAMPARDOS	SHELLOS	SUICUNE	VANILLUXE	
ONIX	RAPIDASH	SHELMET	SUNFLORA	VAPOREON	
OSHAWOTT	RATICATE	SHIELDON	SUNKERN	VENIPEDE	
PACHIRISU	RATTATA	SHIFTRY	SURSKIT	VENOMOTH	
PALKIA	RAYQUAZA	SHINX	SWABLU	VENONAT	
PALPITOAD	REGICE	SHROOMISH	SWADLOON	VENUSAUR	



ABILITIES	HEAVY METAL	POISON POINT	TELEPATHY	AVALANCHE	COSMIC POWER	ENCORE
ADAPTABILITY	HONEY GATHER	POISON TOUCH	TERAVOLT	BARRAGE	COTTON GUARD	ENDEAVOR
AFTERMATH	HUGE POWER	PRANKSTER	THICK FAT	BARRIER	COTTON SPORE	ENDURE
AIR LOCK	HUSTLE	PRESSURE	TINTED LENS	BATON PASS	COUNTER	ENERGY BALL
ANALYTIC	HYDRATION	PSYCHIC	TORRENT	BEAT UP	COVET	ENTRAINMENT
ANGER POINT	HYPER CUTTER	PURE POWER	TOXIC BOOST	BELLY DRUM	CRABHAMMER	ERUPTION
ANTICIPATION	ICE	QUICK FEET	TRACE	BESTOW	CROSS CHOP	EXPLOSION
ARENA TRAP	ICE BODY	RAIN DISH	TRUANT	BIDE	CROSS POISON	EXTRASENSORY
BAD DREAMS	ILLUMINATE	RATTLED	TURBOBLAZE	BIND	CRUNCH	EXTREMESPEED
BATTLE ARMOR	ILLUSION	RECKLESS	UNAWARE	BITE	CRUSH CLAW	FACADE
BIG PECKS	IMMUNITY	REGENERATOR	UNBURDEN	BLAST BURN	CRUSH GRIP	FAINT ATTACK
BLAZE	IMPOSTER	RIVALRY	UNNERVE	BLAZE KICK	CURSE	FAKE OUT
BUG	INFILTRATOR	ROCK	VICTORY STAR	BLIZZARD	CUT	FAKE TEARS
CHLOROPHYLL	INNER FOCUS	ROCK HEAD	VITAL SPIRIT	BLOCK	DARK PULSE	FALSE SWIPE
CLEAR BODY	INSOMNIA	ROUGHSKIN	VOLT ABSORB	BLUE FLARE	DARK VOID	FEATHERDANCE
CLOUD NINE	INTIMIDATE	RUN AWAY	WATER	BODYSLAM	DEFEND ORDER	FEINT
COLOR CHANGE	IRON BARBS	SAND FORCE	WATER ABSORB	BOLT STRIKE	DEFENSE CURL	FIERY DANCE
COMPOUNDEYES	IRON FIST	SAND RUSH	WATER VEIL	BONE CLUB	DEFOG	FINAL GAMBIT
CONTRARY	JUSTIFIED	SAND STREAM	WEAK ARMOR	BONE RUSH	DESTINY BOND	FIRE BLAST
CURSED BODY	KEEN EYE	SAND VEIL	WHITE SMOKE	BONEMERANG	DETECT	FIRE FANG
CUTE CHARM	KLUTZ	SAP SIPPER	WONDER GUARD	BOUNCE	DIG	FIRE PLEDGE
DAMP	LEAF GUARD	SCRAPPY	WONDER SKIN	BRAVE BIRD	DISABLE	FIRE PUNCH
DARK	LEVITATE	SERENE GRACE	ZEN MODE	BRICK BREAK	DISCHARGE	FIRE SPIN
DEFEATIST	LIGHT METAL	SHADOW TAG	221111032	BRINE	DIVE	FISSURE
DEFIANT	LIGHTNINGROD	SHED SKIN	MOVE	BUBBLE	DIZZY PUNCH	FLAIL
DOWNLOAD	LIMBER	SHEER FORCE	ABSORB	BUBBLEBEAM	DOOM DESIRE	FLAME BURST
DRAGON	LIQUID OOZE	SHELLARMOR	ACID	BUG BITE	DOUBLE HIT	FLAME CHARGE
DRIZZLE	MAGIC BOUNCE	SHIELD DUST	ACID ARMOR	BUG BUZZ	DOUBLE KICK	FLAME WHEEL
DROUGHT	MAGIC GUARD	SIMPLE	ACID SPRAY	BULK UP	DOUBLETEAM	FLAMETHROWER
DRYSKIN	MAGMA ARMOR	SKILL LINK	ACROBATICS	BULLDOZE	DOUBLE-EDGE	FLARE BLITZ
EARLY BIRD	MAGNET PULL	SLOW START	ACUPRESSURE	BULLET PUNCH	DOUBLESLAP	FLASH
EFFECT SPORE	MARVEL SCALE	SNIPER	AERIAL ACE	BULLET SEED	DRACO METEOR	FLASH CANNON
ELECTRIC	MINUS	SNOW CLOAK	AEROBLAST	CALM MIND	DRAGON CLAW	FLATTER
FIGHTING	MOLD BREAKER	SNOW WARNING	AFTER YOU	CAMOUFLAGE	DRAGON DANCE	FLING
FILTER	MOODY	SOLAR POWER	AGILITY	CAPTIVATE	DRAGON PULSE	FLY
FIRE	MOTOR DRIVE	SOLID ROCK	AIR CUTTER	CHARGE	DRAGON RAGE	FOCUS BLAST
FLAME BODY	MOXIE	SOUNDPROOF	AIR SLASH	CHARGE BEAM	DRAGON RUSH	FOCUS ENERGY
FLARE BOOST	MULTISCALE	SPEED BOOST	ALLYSWITCH	CHARM	DRAGON TAIL	FOCUS PUNCH
FLASH FIRE	MULTITYPE	STALL	AMNESIA	CHATTER	DRAGONBREATH	FOLLOW ME
FLOWER GIFT	MUMMY	STATIC	ANCIENTPOWER	CHIP AWAY	DRAIN PUNCH	
FLYING	NATURAL CURE	STEADFAST	AQUA JET			FORCE PALM
FORECAST	NO GUARD	STEEL	AQUA RING	CHIT-CHAT	DREAM EATER	FORESIGHT
				CIRCLE THROW	DRILL PECK	FOUL PLAY
FOREWARN EDIEND CHAPD	NORMALIZE	STENCH	AQUA TAIL ARM THRUST	CLEARSMOC	DRILL RUN	FRENZY PLANT
FRIEND GUARD	NORMALIZE	STICKY HOLD		CLEAR SMOG	DUAL CHOP	FROST BREATH
FRISK	OBLIVIOUS	STORM DRAIN	AROMATHERAPY	CLOSE COMBAT	DYNAMICPUNCH	FRUSTRATION
GHOST	OVERCOAT	STURDY	ASSIST	COLL	EARTH POWER	FURY ATTACK
GLUTTONY	OVERGROW	SUCTION CUPS	ASSURANCE	COMET PUNCH	EARTHQUAKE	FURY CWIPES
GRASS	OWN TEMPO	SUPERLUCK	ASTONISH	CONFUSE RAY	ECHOED VOICE	FURY SWIPES
GROUND	PICKPOCKET	SWARM	ATTACK ORDER	CONFUSION	EGG BOMB	FUSION BOLT
GUTS	PICKUP	SWIFTSWIM	ATTRACT	CONSTRICT	ELECTRO BALL	FUSION FLARE
HARVEST	PLUS	SYNCHRONIZE	AURA SPHERE	CONVERSION	ELECTROWEB	FUTURE SIGHT
HEALER	POISON	TANGLED FEET	AURORA BEAM	CONVERSION 2	EMBARGO	GASTRO ACID
HEATPROOF	POISON HEAL	TECHNICIAN	AUTOTOMIZE	COPYCAT	EMBER	GEAR GRIND



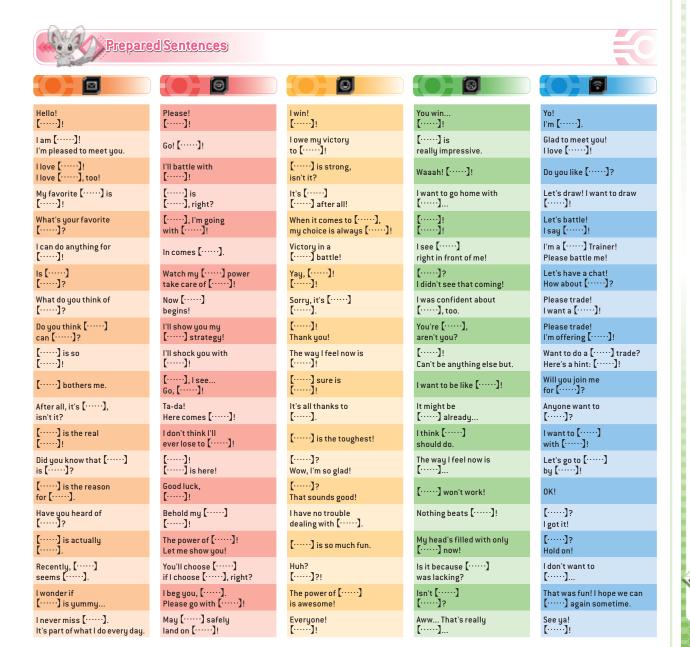




TRAINER	FRIEND CODE	THANK YOU	SNICKER	LIFESTYLE	MONEY	FEELING
CE CARD	GAME SYNC	WELCOME	SNORT	ADVENTURE	MOVIE	ADORE
TTACK	GEONET	WELL DONE	THERE YOU GO	ANIME	MUSIC	ALL RIGHT
AD MATCHUP	GTS	WHAT'S UP?	TUT	ANNIVERSARY	NAME	ANGER
ATTLE	INFRARED	YAH00	UGH	AUTUMN	NAP	ANTICIPATION
HALLENGE	MULTI BATTLE	YEAH, YEAH	UNBELIEVABLE	BALL	NEWS	BEAUTY
HAMPION	MUSICAL	YEP	URGH	BATH	PARTY	BORED
OME ON	PGL	YES	WAHAHA	BICYCLE	PHONE	CLEVERNESS
OURAGE	POKÉMON DW	YO	WAIL	BIRTHDAY	PLANS	COOLNESS
RITICAL HIT	POKÉ TRANSFER		WEEP	BOARD	PLAY HOUSE	CUTENESS
ASY	ROTATION	VOICE	WHOA	воок	PLAYING	DANGER
ASY WIN	SINGLE	AAH	wow	CAMERA	POCKET MONEY	DELIGHT
MERGENCY	SPIN	AGREE	YAAAH	CARDS	POPULARITY	DEPRESSED
IGHT	SUBWAY	АНАНА	YAY	CHANNEL	PROMISE	DIFFICULT
IGHTS	TAG LOG	AIYEEH	YEAH	CHIT-CHAT	RADIO	DISAPPOINTE
0E	TRIPLE	ANGRY		CLASS	SCHOOL	DISLIKE
ENIUS	UNION	BLUSH	PEOPLE	COMICS	SCIENCE	DROOLING
OOD MATCHUP	VOICE CHAT	B00!	ADULT	COMPUTER	SERVICE	ENERGETIC
NVINCIBLE	Wi-Fi	В00-Н00	ALLY	CONVERSATION	SHOP	ENJOYMENT
EGEND	WIRELESS	CRIES	AUNT	CRAZE	SHOPPING	EXCITED
OSS		CUTE LAUGH	BABY	DAILY LIFE	SOFTWARE	HAPPINESS
IATCH	GREETINGS	EEK	BOY	DANCE	SONG	HAPPY
IATCH UP		EH?	BROTHER	DATE	SONGS	HATE
IOVE	BYE-BYE	GIGGLE	EVERYONE	DEPT. STORE	SPECTATE	HEALTHY
0. 1	BYE FOR NOW	GWAHAHAHA	FAMILY	DIET	SPORTS	IMPORTANT
O EFFECT	CHEERS	НАНАНА	FATHER	DREAM	SPRING	INCREDIBLE
O MATCH	EXCUSE ME	HEEEY	FRIEND	EVENT	STORE	LIKES
ARTNER	FORGIVE ME	HEH	GAL	FAIRGROUND	STORY	LOVEY-DOVE
		НЕНЕНЕ		FASHION	STUDY	
OINTS	GIVE ME		GIRL		STUFFED TOY	MESSED UP
OWER	GO AHEAD	HE-HE-HE	GRANDFATHER	FESTIVAL	SUMMER	NERVOUS
REPARATION	GOOD-BYE	HEY!	GRANDMOTHER		SWEETS	NICE
EVIVE	GREETINGS	HEY	HER	FLOWERS		NO WAY
ENSE	HELLO?	HEY?	HIM	GAME	TALK	RARE
ERIOUS	HELLO	НІҮАН	I	GOURMET	TEACHER	RECOMMEND
PIRIT	HERE GOES	HMM	KIDS	GYM	TELEVISION	REGRET
TRATEGY	HEREICOME	нононо	ME	HABIT	TEST	ROFL
TRONG	Н	HUH?	MOTHER	HERO	TODAY	SADNESS
URRENDER	HITHERE	НИМРН	MR.	HEROINE	TOMORROW	SATISFIED
AKE IT EASY	I'M SORRY	LALALA	MS.	HOBBY	TOURNAMENT	SIMPLE
ALENT	I'VE ARRIVED	LET ME THINK	MYSELF	HOLIDAY	TOYS	SKILLFUL
RAINER	LET'S GO	LOL	OLD MAN	HOME	TRAIN	SMILE
ERSUS	MEETYOU	МММ	OPPONENT	IDOL	TRAINING	STRANGENES
ICTORY	NO	MUFUFU	PARENT	INFORMATION	TRAVEL	SUBTLE
'EAK	NOPE	МИНАНАНА	PERSON	ITEM	TREASURE	SURPRISE
INS	NO PROBLEM	OH, DEAR	RIVAL	JOB	VACATION	TEARS
	NO WAY	ОН МҮ	SIBLINGS	KINDERGARTEN	VIEWING	TOUGHNESS
CONNECTION	OKTHEN	OH WELL	SISTER	LESSONS	WALK	USELESS
ATTLE VIDEOS	PARDON ME	OH WOW!	UNCLE	LETTER	WINTER	WANT
HAT	REGARDS	OH, YEAH	WHO	LIFE	WORD	
	SEE YA	OK	YOU	LOOKS	WORK	
OLOSSEUM						
ONNECTION	SORRY	00PS		MACHINE	WORLD	



TERM	DOWSING	MISSION	ANIMATED	INTERNATIONAL GREETINGS
BADGE	ELEGANT	NATURE	G000 0/M 767	BONJOUR
BATTLE BOX	ENTREE	PASS ORB	⊕ HBU0/	CIAO
BATTLE TEST	GOTCHA	PASS POWER	ILONE IT 👓	HALLO
C-GEAR	GROUP	PKMN CENTER	itye fun 🥸	
COLLECTION	HALL OF FAME	POKÉMON	BOOD LUCK!	HELLO
COMPLETE	INSTITUTE	RENTAL	381HRPP4/138	HOLA
COOL	LAUNCHER	SYSTEM	THANK YOU!	안녕하세요
CUTE	LEVEL	TM	SUPERMU	こんにちは
			SORRYa	
DESIGN	MAIL	TOWN MAP		
DIGITAL	MESSAGE	UNIQUE		



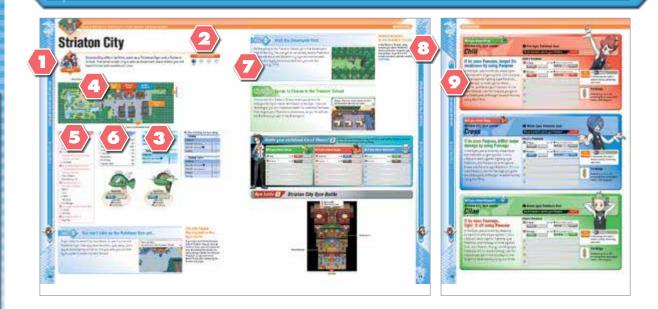
UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

HOW TO USE THIS SECTION

Unova Adventure Walkthrough

Pokémon Training

How to Use This Section



Story

A summary of the area's key features and story events.

Field Moves Needed

Check these icons to see what moves you need to access every area on the map and collect all the items.













Pokémon

These charts list the wild Pokémon appearing in the area during different seasons and so on.

Pokémon Encounter Rate			
0	Frequent	0	Average
Δ	Rare	A	Almost never

Version Differences

Only appears in Pokémon Black Version

Only appears in Pokémon White Version

Item Locations

A Poké Ball symbol indicates where you can find an item.

Items

All the items found in the area, plus any special requirements for finding them.

Poké Mart

All the items you can buy from the lower clerk at the Poké Mart in a Pokémon Center.

Completion Guide

Step-by-step description of key events and what to do in order to complete all the events at that location. Use this in combination with the Recommended Route chart (p. 9).

Spotlight

Highlights other things you should know about the location.

Gym Battle

Information you'll want to know when taking on the local Gym: any special features, the Gym Leader's preferred Pokémon type, and other tips for victory.

The Unova Adventure Walkthrough is based on Pokémon Black Version, but all information on Pokémon White Version is also included.







A rural town whose sea breezes give the sense of something coming

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NUVEMATOWN (

Nuvema Town

Pokémon Training



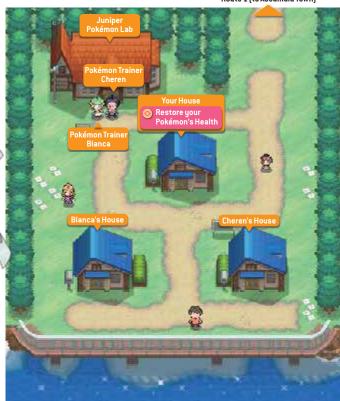
Nuvema Town is the quiet town where you live. Professor Juniper, who researches Pokémon origins, also lives in the town. You will receive your first Pokémon from Professor Juniper and begin your adventurous journey.

Route 1 (to Accumula Town)





Professor Juniper



Step

Open the present from Professor Juniper

Cheren has come to your room after hearing a rumor that a present from Professor Juniper was delivered to your house. Bianca also drops by your room a moment later. Pick the starter Pokémon you want.



Pokémon type matchups

Types and moves are connected in Pokémon. Bianca will start with a Pokémon whose type is weak against your starter Pokémon, and Cheren will start with a Pokémon whose type is strong against your starter Pokémon.

Choose one of these Pokémon from Professor Juniper







Step 2

First battle with Bianca and Cheren

After you choose your starter Pokémon for your adventure, Bianca and Cheren will ask you to have Pokémon battles. You have to battle both of them in a row, but after you battle with Bianca, your Pokémon will be restored to full health, so battle as hard as you can.

Pokémon Training







Step 3

3 Your mom gives you the Xtransceiver

After your battle with Cheren, he and Bianca go downstairs to apologize to your mom about the mess the three of you made in your room. Talk to your mom, and she will give you the Xtransceiver (cross-transceiver) (p. 42).





Xtransceiver



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NUVEMA TOWN

Step 4 Watch TV

There is a TV on the first floor in your house. The TV shows different, fun programs depending on the time. You can find TVs in many places, so watch TV when you have a chance [p. 46].

Pokémon Training



List of Trainers

You can read Pokémon Basics on the PC in your room

You can read Pokémon Basics checking the PC in your room. If this is your first time playing a Pokémon game, make sure to read it.

Step 5 Go pick up Bianca

The three of you decide to visit Professor Juniper to thank her for the Pokémon she gave you. Bianca goes back to her house first, so you can go there to pick her up. When you enter Bianca's house, Bianca's dad is angry and dead set against her journey.



Step 6 Get a Pokédex from Professor Juniper

When you enter the Juniper Pokémon Lab, Professor Juniper will talk to you. She gives each of you a Pokédex (p. 39) and asks you to set out on a journey to register all Pokémon in the Unova region in the Pokédex.





Step 7

Get a Town Map from your mom

After you leave the Juniper Pokémon Lab, Bianca and Cheren catch up with you. Your mom is waiting for you in front of the Juniper Pokémon Lab. Your mom seems to know that Professor Juniper asked you three to set out on a journey. Each of you receives a Town Map (p. 42) from your mom.





Town Map

60

Take the first steps of your adventure on Route 1

Professor Juniper asks you to go to Route 1 so she can teach you how to catch Pokémon. Head north of the town with Cheren and Bianca and take your first steps on Route 1.

Pokémon Training



List of Trainers

After Pokédex's SEEN number Receive a TM from Professor Juniper increases

Once the SEEN number of your Pokédex increases, visit Professor Juniper. She will give you a TM. You will get False Swipe if the SEEN number is 25 or more, Protect if it is 60 or more, and Hidden Power if it is 115 or more (p. 45).





A small road by the shore, where you can enjoy the seascape in peace

Route 1



Tall grass grows on Route 1, and you can catch wild Pokémon in the grass if you have Poké Balls. Catch wild Pokémon and add them to your party for your adventure.

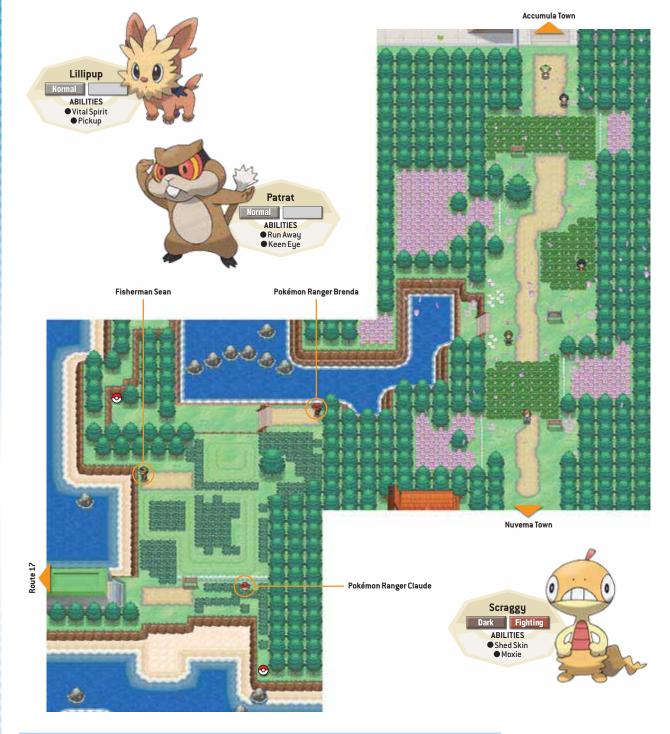


Stems
First visit
☐ Poké Balls ×5
☐ Potion
 After getting Surf
☐ Max Ether
☐ Pearl
After defeating
Pokémon Ranger Brenda
☐ Persim Berry
After defeating
Pokémon Ranger Claude
☐ Persim Berry

Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Lillipup	0
Patrat	0
Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
O:Dark Grass	············
Pokémon	
Herdier	0
Scraggy	0
Watchog	0

Water Surface	········
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Water Surface (ripples)	······
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0

After finishing the main story	
• Fishing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Feebas	\triangle
Fishing (ripples)	**************************************
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Feebas	







Learn how to catch Pokémon

Take Route 1 and you'll find Professor Juniper waiting for you. Professor Juniper catches a wild Patrat that was hiding in the tall grass, and she teaches you how to register it in the Pokédex (p. 22).



Home is where the healing is

When your Pokémon's HP drops from battles with wild Pokémon, go back to your house in Nuvema Town. If you talk to your mom, she restores your Pokémon's health.

Wild Pokémon jump out from tall grass

Bianca and Cheren ask you to compete in a Pokémon hunt using the Poké Balls you got from Professor Juniper. Use the five Poké Balls and catch as many Pokémon as you can.



Listen carefully to changes in the soundtrack

On Route 1, when you walk, the sound of a tambourine will be added to the soundtrack. The sound changes in other places, too, so listen carefully.

Head north to Accumula Town

Go north on Route 1, and your Xtransceiver will ring. It's a call from Professor Juniper. She is waiting in Accumula Town, and she asks you to see her soon. Head north on Route 1 to Accumula Town right away.



Let Pokémon hold a Berry

Some Pokémon Trainers give you Berries after Pokémon battles. If you give a Berry to a Pokémon to hold, the Pokémon will use the Berry to restore its HP or heal a status condition.

After getting

Surf and head to Route 17

After receiving HM03 Surf from Alder at Twist Mountain, you can surf on the water. Use Surf at the water's edge on Route 1 and head west on the water. If you go through a gate and move further, you can reach Route 17 (p. 140).



Get Berries by defeating Trainers

After learning Surf, you can travel over the water and then battle with Pokémon Rangers Brenda and Claude. If you defeat them, each one will give you a Persim Berry.



his town offers great views due to its many hills

Accumula Town



You will see Ghetsis of Team Plasma making a speech in favor of Pokémon liberation in Accumula Town. You will also meet a mysterious person, N, whom you will battle many times during your adventure.



Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)			
Favored Mail	50	Reply Mail	50
Greet Mail	50	RSVP Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50	Thanks Mail	50
Like Mail	50		

Route 2 (to Striaton City)

Pokémon Training





Step 1

Professor Juniper guides you

When you arrive in Accumula Town, Professor Juniper is waiting in front of the Pokémon Center. Talk to Professor Juniper. She will tell you how to use a Pokémon Center and a Poké Mart.



Route 1 (to Nuvema Town)

Professor Juniper talks about Fennel

Professor Juniper asks you to meet an inventor named Fennel in Striaton City. Professor Juniper says Fennel is a friend of hers from long ago and will help you on your way.

Step 2 Check the PC

In every Pokémon Center, a PC is available to anyone. Check your PC. You will find Mail from Bianca (p. 45). Make sure you read it.



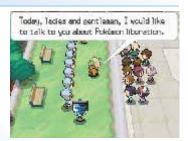
The PC has a Battle Box

Open Someone's PC in a Pokémon Center to access your Battle Box. You can keep Pokémon you want to use in battles with friends in this useful box (p. 44).

A speech in the plaza

Pokémon Training

When you leave the Pokémon Center, you will see a crowd of people in the plaza. Move toward the plaza. The person in the center of the crowd is Ghetsis of Team Plasma. Ghetsis gives a radical speech about liberation of Pokémon from people.



Fully prepare for a battle with N

If you head west after leaving the Pokémon Center, you will hear Ghetsis's speech and battle with N after the speech. If you need to train your Pokémon before the battle, return to Route 1 instead of heading west.

Step 4 A mysterious person named N speaks to you

After Ghetsis, Team Plasma, and the spectators leave, a boy will speak to you. The boy identifies himself as N, and once he learns that you are traveling to complete the Pokédex, he challenges you to a Pokémon battle.



Go to Route 2 after Ghetsis's speech

Team Plasma Grunts are blocking the gate to Route 2 on the west side of Accumula Town, After Ghetsis's speech. they will disappear.

Battle the mysterious N! 1



N uses just one Purrloin, which is at Level 7. You should have leveled up the Pokémon that Professor Juniper gave you by battling wild Pokémon on Route 1. If you battle calmly, you should win this battle.

N S PUKEIIIUII	1011		
Purrloin ♂	Lv. 7	Dark	
Ø			





Listen carefully to the soundtrack

When you enter a house on the north side of the Pokémon Center, you will find a person who plays the piano, and a person who plays drums. Talk to both of them, and the sound of piano and drums will be added to the soundtrack. If you see musicians during your adventure, talk to them to change the soundtrack.











UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Step

Check the electric bulletin board in a gate

There is a gate to Route 2 on the west side of Accumula Town. Electric bulletin boards have been installed in the gates. They show important information all the time. If you see an electric bulletin board, take a good look at it (p. 47).

Pokémon Training



List of Trainers

Play Pokémon rock-paper-scissors

If you talk to a girl on the second floor in the apartment on the east side of the gate, she will ask you to play Pokémon rock-paper-scissors. You can learn Pokémon type matchups, so play with her (p. 256).

Step

UNDVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

ACCUMULA TOWN • ROUTE 2 (6)

Head west to Route 2

Your next destination is Striaton City. Striaton City has a Pokémon Gym where a Leader awaits. Go through the gate on the west side of Accumula Town and head to Striaton City on Route 2.





A pastoral road where novice Trainers can challenge one another

Route 2



Route 2 is a short road to connect Accumula Town and Striaton City. On the way to Striaton City, Pokémon Trainers are waiting to challenge you to battles.





☐ Poké Ball

☐ Potion ×2 ☐ Running Shoes

After getting Cut ☐ Great Ball

☐ Super Potion After getting Strength

□ Rare Candy

Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Lillipup	0
Patrat	0
Purrloin	0

Tall Grass (rustling)	·:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
Pokémon	
Audino	0









Your mom gives you Running Shoes

When you step onto Route 2, your Xtransceiver will ring, and your mom will visit you. She gives you a pair of Running Shoes. Once you have the shoes, press the B Button to run. It's faster than walking!



You can take a shortcut if you cross ledges

When your Pokémon get hurt, retrace your steps and have your Pokémon's health restored in Accumula Town. If you cross the ledges on the road, you can avoid tall grass and move safely.

Step 2

Battle Pokémon Trainers

Pokémon Trainers who are standing on the road challenge you to battle if you make eye contact. Accept their challenges so you can level up your Pokémon. You'll receive prize money by winning battles, too.



Walk around to collect items

You can find a lot of useful items for your adventure on roads, in caves, and so on. Walk around and explore those places to collect all the items.



Step 3

Head north to Striaton City

After you defeat Bianca in the battle, head north on Route 2. Striaton City, where you'll find the first Pokémon Gym, is very close. Battle wild Pokémon in tall grass to level up your Pokémon before visiting the Gym.



Collect items using HMs

On Route 2, you can pick up items by removing obstacles with HMs such as Cut and Strength. After your Pokémon learn HMs, visit Route 2 again.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

STRIATON CITY (6)

Striaton City



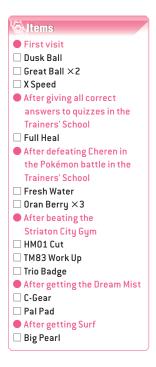
Striaton City offers facilities such as a Pokémon Gym and a Trainers' School. This small urban city is also an important place where you will meet Fennel and receive a C-Gear.

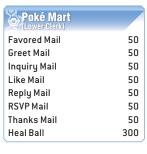






Route 2 (to Accumula Town)







Water Surface	``:©
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Water Surface (ripples)	············
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
M	1







You can't take on the Pokémon Gym yet...

If you enter Striaton City from Route 2, you'll arrive at a Pokémon Gym. You may want to battle right away, but a guy is blocking the entrance. The guy tells you that the Gym Leader is in the Trainers' School.



You can't leave the city before the Gym battle

If you head north from the west side of Striaton City, you can go to Route 3 but you can't leave the city. An elderly man blocks the road until you defeat the Striaton City Gym, so you can travel Route 3 only after defeating the Striaton City Gym.

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Visit the Dreamyard first Step

Before going to the Trainers' School, go to the Dreamyard east of the city. You can get an extremely helpful Pokémon for the battles in the Striaton City Gym and battles with Cheren. It's highly recommended that you visit the Dreamyard first (p. 73).



Answer quizzes in the Trainers' School

In the Trainers' School, a boy quizzes you about Pokémon's status conditions. He gives you two quizzes. If you know the correct answers, you will receive a Full Heal.

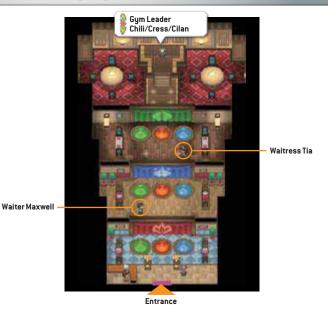
After visiting **Speak to Cheren in the Trainers' School** the Dreamyard

Cheren is in the Trainers' School when you arrive. He tells you the Gym Leader went back to the Gym. Then, he challenges you to a Pokémon battle. He uses the Pokémon that targets your Pokémon's weakness, so you should use the Pokémon you got in the Dreamyard.

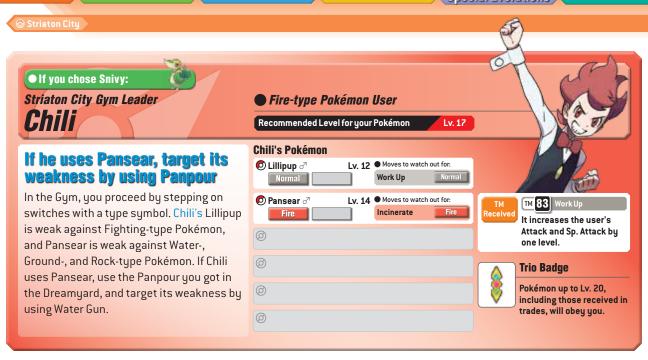


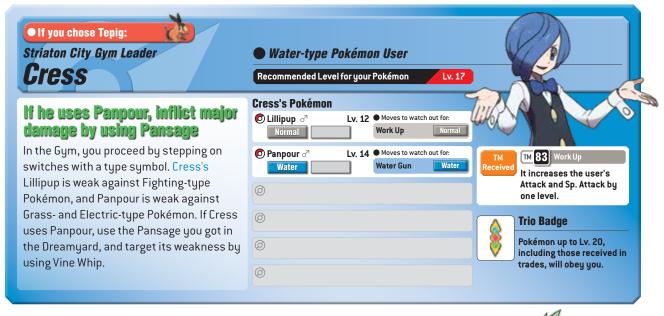


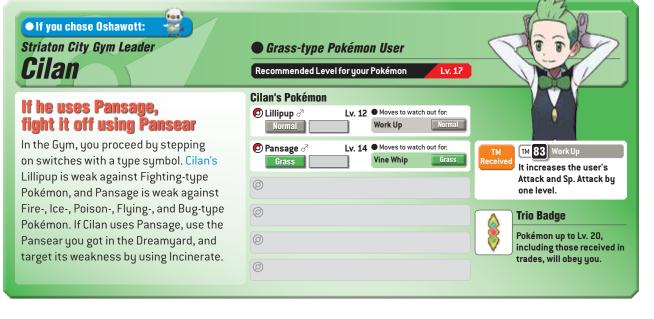
Gym battle 1 Striaton City Gym Battle











Use TMs as much as you like

TMs are useful items to teach moves to Pokémon just by using them. You'll get your first one when you win the Striaton City Gym battle. You can use them as often as you want, so teach moves to your Pokémon by using TMs.

Pokémon Training



After beating the Striaton City Gym

Fennel gives you HM01 Cut

When you leave the Striaton City Gym after defeating the Gym, Fennel is waiting for you. When you go to Fennel's Lab, she will give you HM01 Cut. Now you can cut trees in fields (p. 27).



Collect items by using Cut

By using HM Cut, you can go to a place on Route 2 you couldn't reach before and can get items (p. 66). Once you've received Cut, go back to Route 2 and pick up two items.

After beating the Striaton City Gym

Go to the Dreamyard at Fennel's request

Fennel asks you to bring her some Dream Mist from Munna in the Dreamyard. If she has it, she can collect saved data from Trainers. Head east and visit the Dreamyard (p. 73).



Professor Juniper's friend from college

Fennel and Professor Juniper are friends from college. When you said goodbye to Professor Juniper in Accumula Town, she told you about Fennel.

After getting the Dream Mist Receive a C-Gear from Fennel

Speak to Fennel. She will give you a C-Gear as a token of her appreciation for helping her get the Dream Mist. A C-Gear is a device that lets you use communication features such as infrared, wireless, and online. A C-Gear is displayed on the Touch Screen on a Nintendo DS.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

STRIATON CITY (*)

After getting the Dream Mist

Send your saved data through Game Sync

If you access the Pokémon Dream World in the Pokémon Global Link at www.pokemon-gl.com by using Game Sync, you can add Pokémon you can't catch in the game to your party. If you have a PC and a wireless Internet connection, give it a try.

Pokémon Training



Check Help on a PC

Help on a PC in a Pokémon Center is a very useful function. You can read about how to use the C-Gear. Also, you can learn about communication features using Infrared Connection and DS Wireless Communications.

After getting the Dream Mist Amanita gives you a Pal Pad

When you are listening to Fennel, a girl named Amanita approaches you and gives you a Pal Pad. A Pal Pad can issue the Friend Codes necessary for several types of communication features. You can check Friend Codes in your Pal Pad.





After getting Facilities on the other all Pokémon Centers **Facilities on the second floor open in**

The second floor in the Pokémon Center is now open. On the second floor, you can find Geonet, the Global Terminal, the Pokémon Wi-Fi Club, and the Union Room. You can enjoy playing different features (p. 43).



Register in Geonet, too

If you use Geonet, you can register the place where you live on the globe. If you check the globe after a Link Trade through GTS, you can see where the Pokémon came from.

After getting the Dream Mist Go north on Route 3

The next destination is Nacrene City (p. 82). To reach it, go west through town, head north from the fountain, and then go north on Route 3 (p. 75). Before you leave the city, stop by the Pokémon Center if your team needs healing.



Pick up a pearl after getting Surf

Once you have HM Surf, surf on the pond on the west side of the town. Speak to the man standing there, and he will give you a Big Pearl you can sell at a high price.





A plant site used as a playground for children and Pokémon

The Dreamyard

Pokémon Training



The Dreamyard is an old factory site. The plant was closed, and now the ruins are a playground for children. You will visit this place often in the story, and you can visit new sections of the Dreamyard after finishing the main story.











Munna with the Hidden Ability Telepathy don't appear in the wild.



Battle Trainers to level up your Pokémon

After the first visit to the Dreamyard, you can challenge the Striaton City Gym. Battle the two Pokémon Trainers in the Dreamyard to level up your Pokémon.







Step 2 Receive a Pokémon from a girl

Pokémon Training

Talk to a girl near the factory gate. She will give you a Pokémon. The Pokémon you receive depends on which Pokémon you received from Professor Juniper at the beginning of your adventure. Let it shine in the battles with Cheren and with the Striaton City Gym Leader.



Pokémon you can receive depending on your starter Pokémon







Step 3 Go back to Striaton City

There's more to the Dreamyard, though you can't reach these locations yet. Once the girl gives you the Pokémon, head back to Striaton City to battle with Cheren or challenge the Striaton City Gym (p. 69).



After Walk into the back with Bianca

Teach your Pokémon the move Cut using the HM01 Cut you received from Fennel in Striaton City. When you cut the tree and move forward, Bianca shows up. Walk into the back of the Dreamyard with her.



Teach your Pokémon Cut

You've just received HM01 Cut from Fennel. At this point, two of the three starter Pokémon can learn the move, as can Pansage, Patrat, and Purrloin. If you started with Tepig, try to catch one of the others.

After Team Plasma bully Munna

When you walk into the back of the Dreamyard, you'll find Munna. When Munna sees you and Bianca, it runs away to the north. Then some Team Plasma Grunts show up. Team Plasma seems to want the Dream Mist, too. Beat the two Team Plasma Grunts who bully Munna.



getting Cut

Ghetsis shows up, and **Team Plasma Grunts run away**

Even after the battles, the Team Plasma Grunts keep trying to bully Munna. Then Ghetsis shows up and scolds the Grunts, and they run away. But this Ghetsis was an illusion created by Musharna!

Pokémon Training



Go back to Striaton City with Fennel

After Team Plasma leaves, Musharna shows up and exits with Munna, leaving the Dream Mist behind. After Fennel shows up and gets the Dream Mist, go back to Striaton City and visit Fennel's Lab (p. 71).



Use the back stairs at the factory after finishing the main story

You can use the stairs at the back of the Dreamyard after finishing the main story. You can get items and battle many Pokémon Trainers there, so make sure to come back.

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

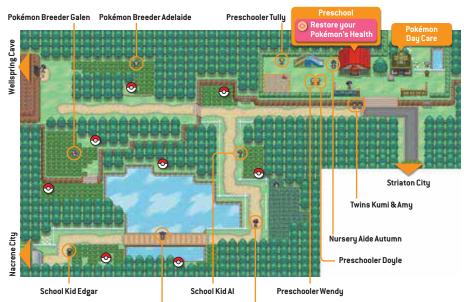


long and winding road with lots of ponds and tall grass

Route 3



On Route 3, you'll find a Pokémon Day Care to help you raise Pokémon and a lot of Pokémon Trainers, so you can train your Pokémon. The west side of the road leads to the Wellspring Cave.



School Kid Marsha

School Kid Gina





Pokémon Training





List of Trainers



Step

Pidove Purrloin

Leave a Pokémon at the Day Care

You can leave a Pokémon (or two) at the Pokémon Day Care and have it raised for you. If you do, go visit them after you enjoy your adventure for a while. The Pokémon will have leveled up. You need money to use the Day Care, but it's convenient. Make good use of the service.



Leaving two Pokémon

At first, you can leave only one Pokémon in the Pokémon Day Care. But once you get a Bicycle in Nimbasa City, you can leave two Pokémon in the Day Care (p. 105). If you leave two Pokémon, a Pokémon Egg may be found there later.

Fight your first Double Battle

Twin Pokémon Trainers stand at the entrance of the Preschool. If you catch their eyes, you'll have a Double Battle with them—your first Double Battle! In a Double Battle, the Pokémon in the first and the second positions in your party participate. Have a strong Pokémon in the second position, too.



Heal your Pokémon in the Preschool

In the Preschool, you can have your Pokémon's health restored. Since you have to battle many Pokémon Trainers in a row on Route 3, if your Pokémon get hurt, have them healed in the Preschool.



Step

Chase Team Plasma and head west

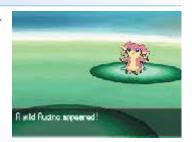
After defeating Cheren in the battle, you'll see Team Plasma run away to the west. Then, Bianca and a girl come running after them. It turns out that Team Plasma stole a Pokémon from the girl, and the Grunts are running away. Chase Team Plasma with Cheren.

Pokémon Training



A special Pokémon in the rustling grass

After you get your first Gym Badge, rustling grass appears. If you step on the rustling grass, you can meet uncommon Pokémon. If you see this special grass, rush into it and catch a Pokémon (p. 28).



Go to the Wellspring Cave where Team Plasma fled

If you go to the west side of Route 3, you'll see an entrance into the Wellspring Cave. According to Cheren, the Team Plasma Grunts who stole the girl's Pokémon fled into this cave. Go inside the cave and beat Team Plasma (p. 78).



You can't go south at first

If you try to go south to the gate to Nacrene City, you can't because Bianca asks you to get the Pokémon back first. Bianca disappears only after you win against Team Plasma in the Wellspring Cave.

After visiting the Wellspring

Two Pokémon may pop out from darker grass

On Route 3, you will see darker-colored grass. If you encounter wild Pokémon in the dark grass, two Pokémon may appear at the same time—a Double Battle! If you want to catch one of the two Pokémon, you must make the other Pokémon faint first.



Get Berries by defeating Trainers

If you defeat Pokémon Breeder Adelaide, she will give you an Oran Berry. If you defeat Pokémon Breeder Galen after getting Surf, he will give you a Lum Berry. Battle both of them, and collect Berries.

After visiting the Wellspring : Go south to Nacrene City

When you save the girl's Pokémon from Team Plasma, Bianca will leave and you can go to the gate on the west side. Head to the next destination, Nacrene City, defeating Trainers on the way. Go through the gate (p. 82).





UNDVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

WELLSPRING CAVE (*)

This underwater pool grew from rainwater soaking into the ground

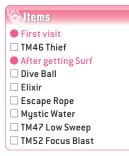
Wellspring Cave

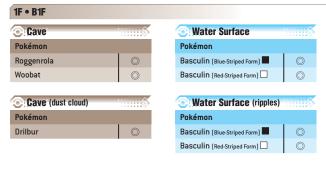


The Wellspring Cave is the first cave you visit. The Team Plasma Grunts who fled after stealing the Pokémon are inside the cave. You'll find Pokémon Trainers on B1F, and you can battle with them after getting HM03 Surf.







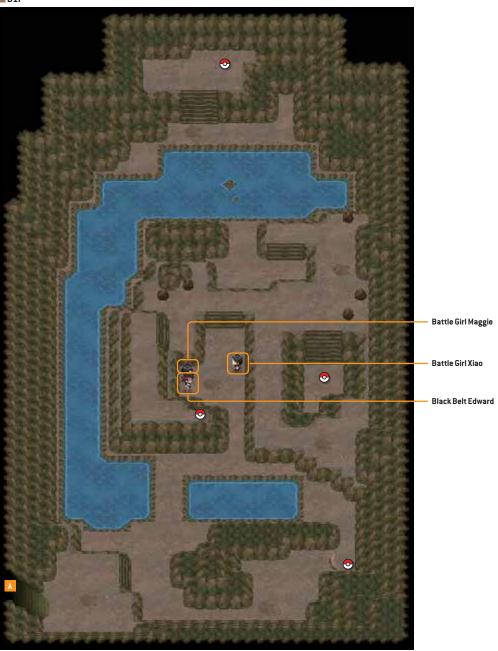








B1F





Beat the Team Plasma Grunts

When you enter the Wellspring Cave, Cheren and Team Plasma are glaring at each other. The Team Plasma Grunts say the child cannot use a Pokémon to its full potential and challenge you to battle. It's a chance to win the girl's Pokémon back. Beat the Grunts.



Rush to dust clouds

When a dust cloud appears in the Wellspring Cave, you can meet an uncommon Pokémon or get an item. Hurry and step on the dust cloud (p. 28).



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Step

Challenge Team Plasma to a Tag Battle

Once a battle has started, Team Plasma Grunts join in and attack you at the same time. Challenge them to a Tag Battle with Cheren. In a Tag Battle you cooperate with an ally and battle using one Pokémon each. When you win the battle, the Grunts return the girl's Pokémon.

Pokémon Training



Step

UNDVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

WELLSPRING CAVE (4)



Get an item and return to Route 3

Your goal in the Wellspring Cave is accomplished once you recover the Pokémon from Team Plasma, but before leaving the cave, you can collect an item. Get TM46 Thief, and go back to Route 3 (p. 77).



After getting Surf

Explore B1F by using Surf

Once you've received HM03 Surf from the Champion Alder at Twist Mountain, teach the move to a Pokémon. Then surf on the water and go to the back of the cave. Go everywhere on 1F and B1F, and collect all the items.



Use Flash

B1F is pitch black and you can't see anything around you. Light the way with Flash. You can get TM70 Flash in Castelia City and teach the move to a Pokémon.







Nacrene City

Pokémon Training



Nacrene City is a city of artists where storehouses built 100 years ago have been restored. It's also home to Café Warehouse, a stylish café for such a rural area. You'll also visit a museum where Pokémon can be restored from Fossils.



Pokémon White Version

Items First visit

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

- □ Chesto Berry ×3 ☐ Fresh Water
- If you answered "Snivy" to the woman's question
- ☐ Miracle Seed
- If you answered "Tepig" to the woman's question
- If you answered "Oshawott" to the woman's question
- ☐ Mystic Water

After defeating the Nacrene City Gym

- ☐ Basic Badge
- ☐ Dowsing MCHN ☐ TM67 Retaliate
- After visiting the Relic Castle
- ☐ Dark Stone (Pokémon White
- ☐ Light Stone (Pokémon Black Version)

Poké Mart	
Favored Mail	50
Greet Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50
Like Mail	50
Reply Mail	50
RSVP Mail	50
Thanks Mail	50
Heal Ball	300
Net Ball	1,000

Shop	
X Sp. Def	350
X Special	350
X Speed	350
X Attack	500
X Defend	550
Dire Hit	650
Guard Spec.	700
X Accuracy	950

Cheren shows you the city

If you head west after entering the city, Cheren will talk to you. Cheren leads you to the Pokémon Center. In front of the Pokémon Center, Cheren gives you Chesto Berries and tells you about the Nacrene City Gym Leader.



Meet furniture designer Loblolly

If you tuck in a Pokémon using Game Sync after choosing a piece of furniture that Loblolly talks about, the furniture will be added to a Dream Catalogue in the Pokémon Dream World of the Pokémon Global Link at www.pokemon-gl.com.



How strong is your Pokémon friendship?

Speak to a woman in the second house to the right of the Pokémon Center. She will rate your friendship with the Pokémon at the head of your party. Friendship can influence Pokémon evolution, and some Pokémon evolve with high friendship (p. 26).



Buy items useful for battles

Items for sale at the shop increase a Pokémon's stats by one level in battle, although using one takes up a turn. Use the item depending on your strategy and get an advantage in a battle.

Step 3 Trade Pokémon with a person in the city

Speak to a woman on the second floor in the second house to the right of the Pokémon Center, and she will ask you to trade Pokémon. The Pokémon you give and receive in trade differ between Pokémon Black Version and Pokémon White Version (p. 150).



Trade with five townspeople

You can trade Pokémon with five people in the Unova region (including places you can visit after finishing the main story). Some trade Pokémon from other regions (p. 150).



Give Pokémon an item

Speak to a woman in the second house to the left of the Pokémon Center. She will give you an item depending on the answer you give. If you answer Snivy, you'll get a Miracle Seed; if you answer Tepig, a Charcoal; and if you answer Oshawott, a Mystic Water.



Rock Smash is useful in the Gym battle

Speak to a Battle Girl at the entrance of Pinwheel Forest, and she will give you TM94 Rock Smash. This will be useful in the Nacrene City Gym battle, so it's good to get it first.



Visit Café Warehouse on Wednesdays

Café Warehouse is a stylish café in a rural area that has a special on Wednesdays. Speak to a Waitress, and she will give you a Soda Pop. Soda Pop is an item to restore the HP of one Pokémon by 60 points.



Enjoy the sound of an accordion

You'll find a man who is playing the accordion at the terrace outside Café Warehouse. If you get closer to him, the sound of the accordion is added to the soundtrack.



Accordion



The second encounter with the mysterious N in front of the Gym

Pokémon Training

When you are about to enter the Nacrene City Gym, N comes out and speaks to you. N talks about his ideal relationship with Pokémon and the future for a while. After he finishes his story, he challenges you to a Pokémon battle.



Battle the mysterious N! 2

N uses three Pokémon, all at Level 13. Target their weaknesses. Attack his Pidove with Electric-, Ice-, and Rock-type moves, Tympole with Grass- and Electric-type moves, and Timburr with Flying- and Psychic-type moves.



Step 7

The Pokémon Gym is inside the Nacrene Museum

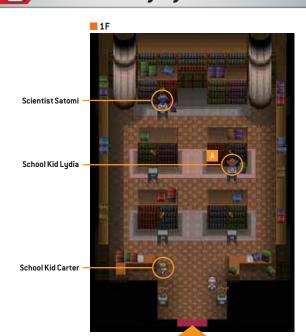
The Nacrene City Gym is located at the back of the Nacrene Museum. In the museum, a Pokémon Fossil can be turned back into a living Pokémon. Speak to the assistant director, Hawes. He will explain the museum exhibits in detail.



The assistant director Hawes is Lenora's husband

After the assistant director Hawes explains the exhibits, he tells you that the Nacrene City Gym Leader Lenora is his wife.

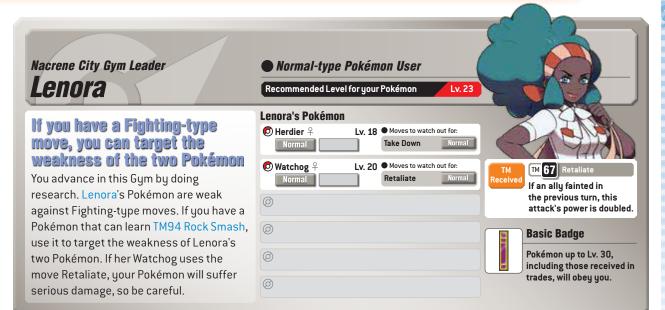
Gym battle 2 Nacrene City Gym Battle





Entrance





After beating Team Plasma steals the Dragon Skull the Nacrene City Gym

After you defeat Lenora in the Nacrene City Gym, Hawes rushes in. He says Team Plasma has raided the museum. In the museum, Team Plasma steals the Dragon Skull by using smoke screens and running off.

Pokémon Training



After beating the Nacrene Meet the Castelia City Gym Leader, Burgh City Gym

Lenora chases Team Plasma, and when you follow her, you run into the Castelia City Gym Leader, Burgh. Bianca and Cheren also join you. Lenora decides that she will check the east side of the city, and Bianca and Cheren will protect the museum.



After beating the Nacrene Head to Pinwheel Forest with Burgh City Gym

Lenora asks you to search Pinwheel Forest with Burgh to bring back the Dragon Skull that Team Plasma stole. Head west through the city and hurry to Pinwheel Forest (p. 87)







After beating the Nacrene Bianca gives you a Dowsing MCHN City Gym

Pokémon Training

When you are ready to go to Pinwheel Forest, Bianca stops you and gives you a Dowsing MCHN that can find hidden items (p. 43). Use this item right away in Pinwheel Forest.





After visiting the Relic Castle

Meet Professor Juniper in front of the museum

When you visit the Nacrene Museum after leaving the Relic Castle, Professor Juniper, Cedric Juniper, Bianca, and the Champion Alder are standing in front of the museum. Professor Juniper says you are caught up in something serious.



After visiting the Relic

Lenora gives you the Light Stone (Dark Stone)

Lenora comes out of the Nacrene Museum and hands you the Light Stone (Pokémon Black Version) or Dark Stone (Pokémon White Version). Lenora says Team Plasma probably stole the Dragon Skull because they want to restore the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon.









Dark Stone

After visiting the Relic

Lenora thinks of ideal advisers

After you receive the Light Stone (Dark Stone), Alder speaks to you and asks if you are prepared to battle N if anything happens to him. Lenora remembers people who are familiar with the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon.



After visiting the Relic Castle

Fly to Icirrus City and walk to Opelucid City

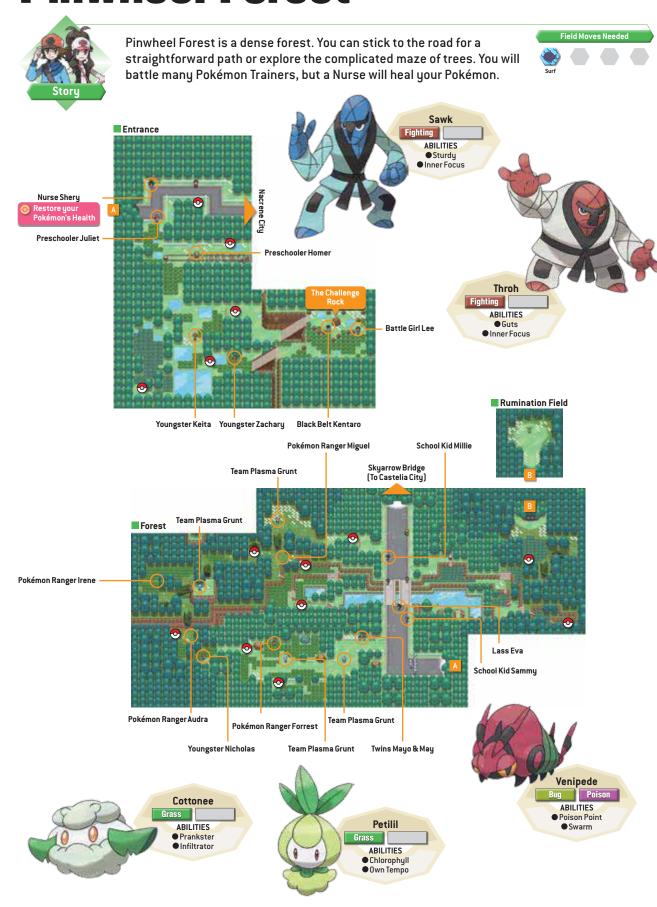
To follow Alder to Opelucid City, first use Fly to get to Icirrus City. Head northeast through Icirrus City to walk to Opelucid City along Route 8 (p. 154).



You can go through hollows of fallen trees, too



Pinwheel Forest







Pokémon Training

⊙:Tall Grass		O Dark Grass	
Pokémon		Pokémon	
Pidove		Pidove	0
Sawk 📕		Sawk	Δ
Throh		Throh	Δ
Timburr	0	Timburr	0
Tympole		Tympole	
Tall Grass (rustling)			
Pokémon			
Audino	0		
Sawk 🗌	\triangle		
Throh			

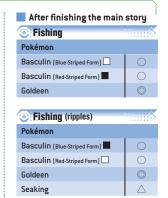
J	U	r	Ľ	S	l

• Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Cottonee	0
Petilil	0
Pidove	0
Sewaddle	0
Venipede	0

Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Lilligant 🗌	\triangle
Panpour	
Pansage	
Pansear	\triangle
Whimsicott	

① Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Cottonee	0
Petilil 🗌	0
Swadloon	0
Tranquill	0
Whirlipede	0

Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	
Water Surface (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0



Depart after preparing for status conditions

Pinwheel Forest is full of Pokémon that inflict special conditions in battle, such as Venipede and Cottonee (or Petilil). Before entering Pinwheel Forest, it's a good idea to buy several healing items such as Antidote, Parlyz Heal, and Awakening at Nacrene City's Pokémon Center.



Find items with the **Dowsing MCHN**

The Dowsing MCHN, which you received from Bianca in Nacrene City, is a item that helps you find hidden items. There are many hidden items in Pinwheel Forest, so use it to find them.

Step 2 A Nurse heals your Pokémon

Shery, the Nurse at the entrance to Pinwheel Forest, will heal your Pokémon if you defeat her in battle. Afterward, you can ask her to heal your Pokémon anytime, so if you run into trouble in Pinwheel Forest, talk to Nurse Shery.



Can't enter Pinwheel Forest?

You can't go into the depths of Pinwheel Forest until you defeat the Nacrene City Gym Leader. If Team Plasma is blocking the way into the depths of the forest, go back to challenge the Nacrene City Gym.

Get Star Pieces by smashing the challenge rock

A challenge rock sits in the southern part of Pinwheel Forest. If you have a Fighting-type Pokémon in your party, it can hit the rock once a day. Chipping away at the challenge rock gives you a Star Piece that you can sell for a lot of money.

Pokémon Training



Catch a Fighting-type **Pokémon**

Visit Pinwheel Forest if you are having trouble with the Normal-type Pokémon used in the Nacrene City Gym. The forest is home to manu Fighting-type Pokémon, which have an advantage against Normal-type Pokémon.

Step

Go west from the Nurse

Pinwheel Forest is huge, and it's easy to run out of steam in the middle of the forest if you try to pass through in a single trip. First, battle the Pokémon Trainers around the entrance and gather some items. After you've had your Pokémon healed by Nurse Shery, go west and enter the forest.



Defeat Rangers to get **Berries**

Get Chesto Berries by defeating Pokémon Rangers Forrest and Audra in battle, and Pecha Berries by defeating Pokémon Rangers Irene and Miguel. Take the time to battle them while chasing Team Plasma, because the Berries can be useful!

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

PINWHEEL FOREST



Battle Team Plasma as you proceed into the forest

When you enter Pinwheel Forest from the east side, Burgh goes north to chase Team Plasma, and he asks you to go west to see if Team Plasma is hiding in that direction. Proceed through the forest while defeating the Team Plasma Grunts.



The mysterious moss-covered rock

A moss-covered rock sits deep in the western part of Pinwheel Forest. This rock is related to the evolution of a Pokémon that appears in a different region (p.

Step

Reclaim the Dragon Skull from Team Plasma

Venture even deeper into Pinwheel Forest while battling Pokémon Trainers and collecting items. You can reclaim the stolen Dragon Skull after defeating the last of the Team Plasma Grunts.





Dragon Skull



Meet Gorm, one of Team Plasma's Seven Sages

After you reclaim the Dragon Skull, Gorm, one of Team Plasma's Seven Sages, shows up. Gorm disappears after you talk to him, and Burgh leaves after telling you he will be waiting at the Castelia City Gym. Lenora gives you a Moon Stone as thanks after you return the Dragon Skull.







Look around Pinwheel Forest

Head east from the place where Lenora left, and you will reach a paved road. There are several Pokémon Trainers on this road, so challenge them to battle. The fence on the east side of the route has a gap in it—but an old man is blocking the path, so you can't go that way at this point.

Pokémon Training



Step

Head north on the Skyarrow Bridge

Once you've had a look around Pinwheel Forest, go north on the paved road and head toward your destination, Castelia City. The Skyarrow Bridge, which has a fantastic view, links Pinwheel Forest to Castelia City.



After getting the Bicycle

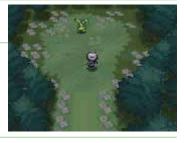
You can now go where you couldn't go before

After you get the Bicycle in Nimbasa City, the old man who was blocking the gap in the fence is gone, and you can continue deeper into the forest. Also, if you use Surf, you can collect an extra item.



After capturing Meeting the Legendary Pokémon Virizion

After you meet the Legendary Pokémon Cobalion in Mistralton Cave (p. 143), the four seals disappear, and you can proceed to Rumination Field, the deepest part of Pinwheel Forest. The Legendary Pokémon Virizion is waiting for you there.



Capture Virizion!

First, use moves that do double damage, such as Fire-, Ice-, Poison-, and Psychic-type moves. After that, reduce its HP gradually with moves that aren't very effective, such as Water-, Grass-, Electric-, and Groundtype moves. Virizion has the Justified Ability, so if you use Dark-type moves against it, its Attack stat will go up. Be careful!





Pokémon Training

The Skyarrow Bridge

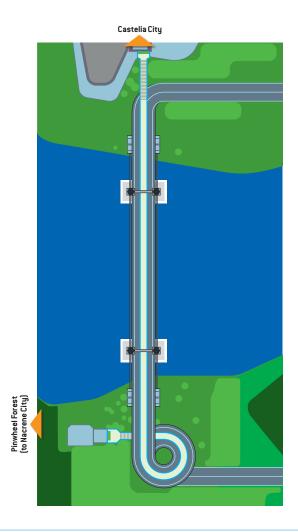


The Skyarrow Bridge connects Pinwheel Forest to Castelia City. The bridge has two levels, and trucks pass by on the lower level. As you cross the bridge, Castelia City's skyscrapers come closer in an impressive scene.

Field Moves Needed







Step 1

Cross the bridge to Castelia City

Across the Skyarrow Bridge is the Unova region's largest city, Castelia City (p. 92). Enjoy the beautiful scenery as you cross the bridge to discover what adventures await on the other side!



Think fast!

There's a Hiker in a gate on the Pinwheel Forest side. Talk to him to get the Quick Claw. When a Pokémon is holding this useful item, sometimes it will attack first in battle.



A big city with skyscrapers piercing the clouds

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

CASTELIA CITY (*)

Castelia City

Pokémon Training



Skyscrapers tall enough to pierce the clouds are clustered in Castelia City, and its many streets bustle with the comings and goings of many people. The elegant cruise ship, The Royal Unova, is moored at the port.

Fie	ld M	oves	Ne	eded	ì
)))	

Story
(Items
• First visit
☐ Fresh Water
☐ Hyper Potion
Lemonade
☐ Quick Ball x3
Revive
☐ Scope Lens
☐ Smoke Ball
☐ Timer Ball x3
☐ TM44 Rest
☐ TM45 Attract
☐ TM70 Flash
☐ Yache Berry
When your answer to the
man's question is Pansage
☐ Leaf Stone
When your answer to the
man's question is Pansear
☐ Fire Stone
When your answer to the
man's question is Panpour
☐ Water Stone
After defeating Janitor Geoff
☐ Exp. Share
After you've answered all
of the surveys at Passerby
Analytics HQ
☐ Soda Pop
When your Pokédex's SEEN
number is 20 Pokémon or
more
Eviolite
When you've defeated the
three Dancers Amulet Coin
After winning the Castelia
City Gym challenge
☐ Insect Badge
☐ TM76 Struggle Bug
_ THE STRUBBLE BUB

Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)	
BridgeMail S	50
Favored Mail	50
Greet Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50
Like Mail	50
Reply Mail	50
RSVP Mail	50
Thanks Mail	50
Heal Ball	300
Nest Ball	1,000
Net Ball	1,000

Vending Machine	
Fresh Water	200
Soda Pop	300
Lemonade	350



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Get a Pokémon-evolving item

Pass through the gate and walk into the viewing area that juts out into the ocean. Talk to the man there, and he will tell you that the Pokémon you received in the Dreamyard evolves by using a stone. He will give you a Leaf Stone if your answer to his question is Pansage, a Fire Stone if your answer is Pansear, or a Water Stone if it is Panpour.

Pokémon Training



It's not always rush hour

Traffic changes according to time in Castelia Street, Mode Street, and in front of the Route 4 gate. In mornings and evenings, the streets are very crowded. In the afternoons and nights, they are a little crowded, and late at night, there aren't many people. Visit at different times to observe the changes.

Step <

Register Zorua in your Pokédex

In the lobby of GAME FREAK's building on Castelia Street, a girl is reading a picture book to a small boy. "Zorua, who was left alone, wandered around looking for its mother..." If you listen to the story, Zorua will be registered in your Pokédex.



Is today your lucky

On Castelia City's Castelia Street, and in many other places throughout the Unova region, vending machines sell drinks. Vending machines have a little bonus. If you're lucky, you might get an extra drink for free!



Visit GAME FREAK on the 22nd

In the GAME FREAK building, you can take the elevator up to the 22nd floor to visit the creators of Pokémon Black Version and Pokémon White Version. Talk to some of the people who made the game, like the Game Director and Graphic Designer.



Step 4

Get a massage for your Pokémon

Talk to a woman on the first floor of the building across from GAME FREAK's office, and she will give your Pokémon a massage. Letting one of your Pokémon get a massage will make that Pokémon a little more friendly toward you! Pokémon massages are available once per day.





Get items by trading with many people

Talk to the man on the second floor of the Pokémon Center, and he will give you one of six items depending on the number of different people you've traded Pokémon with. If you've traded with 50 or more people, you'll get a Master Ball that will always capture any Pokémon.



Gifts you get for trading with people: Wide Lens **Everstone** Zoom Lens **Choice Scarf**

40 or more



No cruising on the Royal Unova

The cruise ship, the Royal Unova, is moored at the cruise ship dock. Although you might want to go inside, you can't ride it right now. You can ride the Royal Unova once you've completed the main story (p. 189).



Register your favorite Pokémon

PP Max

Master Ball

Talk to the person standing in front of the computer at the Pokémon Center to hear about favorite Pokémon, and register the first Pokémon in your party. Then the favorite Pokémon is displayed in the Vs. Recorder's ranking screen.



Get Berries by showing Pokémon

Talk to the Harlequin in Studio Castelia. Every day he will ask to see a certain type of Pokémon. If you show him the type of Pokémon he wants to see, he will give you your choice of a Cheri Berry, Chesto Berry, Pecha Berry, Rawst Berry, or Aspear Berry.

Pokémon Training



Change your Pokémon's nickname

Name-Rating Services are available in a building on the road that continues to Route 4. If you want, you can change your Pokémon's nickname. However. you can't change the nickname of a Pokémon you've received in a trade.

Step



Get TM70 Flash

Enter Narrow Street and continue down the road. A man in sunglasses pops out from behind a garbage bin and gives you TM70 Flash. If you teach Flash to a Pokémon, it can light up dark caves.



Challenge the Gym before moving on

Continue north from the central area to get to Route 4. Until you defeat the Castelia City Gym Leader, a Worker will block your way, and you can't continue. Visit this area after you've obtained

Step <



Buy a Casteliacone on Tuesday

It's not easy to buy a Casteliacone, even if you can afford the 100 price tag. The Casteliacone stand on Mode Street is closed during the winter, and if you visit on any day but Tuesday, the last man in line will tell you they're sold out. But keep trying, because the Casteliacone is very useful it can heal a Pokémon of all status conditions!



the Gym Badge.



Get an Exp. Share at the Battle Company

The Battle Company on Mode Street is full of Pokémon Trainers, and you can enjoy Pokémon battling there. The Trainers get tougher as you approach the top, and if you defeat the Janitor on the 55th floor, he'll give you an Exp. Share (p. 37)!



Another Exp. Share!

You can receive a second Exp. Share, a very useful item that gives Experience Points to a Pokémon even if it isn't used in battle. Take a Pokémon you've raised to Icirrus City's Pokémon Fan Club (p. 148) to get it!



Visit Passerby Analytics HQ

When you enter the Passerby Analytics HQ and talk to the leader, he will appoint you as a statistician. Being a statistician lets you receive Passerby Survey requests. If you take your Nintendo DS to a place where other people are playing the game, you can enjoy Tag Mode with other Pokémon fans.



Need cash?

need more money.

holding it joins a battle. Have a Pokémon hold this when you





Bring the three Dancers together

Dancer Mickey is in the central area by the fountain. He tells you he wants to form a dance team, and he asks you to talk to the other Dancers, Edmond on Narrow Street and Raymond on the Unity Pier, and battle them. When you talk to Mickey after that, he gives you the Amulet Coin.





Step 13 Meet Cheren and Burgh at the Pokémon Gym

Pokémon Training

Cheren, who has just finished his Gym challenge, comes out of the Castelia City Gym when you try to enter for the first time. Gym Leader Burgh is right behind him. Burgh asks you to come with him to Prime Pier, because Team Plasma has shown up again.



Step 14

Bianca's Pokémon is stolen by Team Plasma

When you get to Prime Pier, you see Burgh, Bianca, and a girl named Iris, from Opelucid City. Bianca is sad because Team Plasma stole one of her Pokémon. One member of Team Plasma comes back, but then sees Burgh and runs away. Chase after her!



Step 15

A Team Plasma base—right near the Gym?!

It turns out Team Plasma has been hiding in a building right across from the Castelia City Gym! Defeat the Team Plasma Grunts at the entrance, go inside, and meet Ghetsis. At first, Ghetsis lectures Burgh, but then he backs down and returns Bianca's Munna.



Step 16

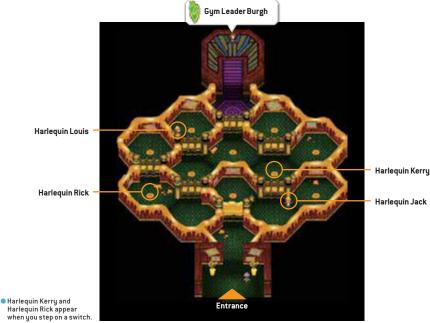
Get a Yache Berry from Iris

Team Plasma leaves after giving Munna back. Bianca makes Iris her bodyguard, and says she's going to tour Castelia City. As thanks for your help against Team Plasma, Iris gives you a Yache Berry.



Gym battle 3

Castelia City Gym Battle





City Gym

Bianca challenges you to a hattle via the Xtransceiver

After you defeat the Gym Leader, Bianca calls you on the Xtransceiver to challenge you to a Pokémon battle. The two of you agree to meet at the gate to Route 4 on the north side of Castelia City.

Pokémon Training



Remember to heal up

Don't forget to visit the Pokémon Center and heal your Pokémon before meeting Bianca for a battle. Your Pokémon are probably tired after battling at the Castelia City Gym.

After beating the Castelia City Gym

Head for the gate that connects to Route 4

Take any street and go to the central area with the fountain, then head north to reach the gate to Route 4. Bianca comes up to you from behind once you enter the gate.





Go north towards Route 4 the Castelia City Gym

Your next destination is Nimbasa City. Head north on Route 4 to reach Nimbasa City (p. 105). You can also get to the Desert Resort via Route 4. It's a good place to train your Pokémon, and you can get a Pokémon Fossil, so stop by.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

ROUTE 4 (

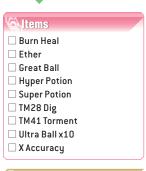
Route 4



Since there is always a sandstorm on Route 4, the route being built in the desert still isn't complete. There are two exits to the north: The eastern exit goes to Nimbasa City, and the western exit goes to the Desert Resort.

Field Moves Needed

Surf



Desert	
Pokémon	
Darumaka	0
Sandile	0
Scraggy	0
	•
Water Surface	
Pokémon	

Pokémon	
Frillish	0
Water Surface (ripples)	::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
Pokémon	
Alomomola	0
Jellicent	Δ



Pokémon

Clamperl	0
Krabby	0
Luvdisc	\triangle
Fishing (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Gorebyss 🗆	\triangle
Huntail 🔳	\triangle
Kingler	\triangle
Luvdisc	0
Relicanth	0







 Darumaka with the Hidden Ability Inner Focus don't appear in the wild.



Battle Pokémon Trainers as you go

On Route 4, Pokémon Trainers await not only on the paved road, but on the desert sands as well. If you head west after leaving Castelia City, you'll find a few more Trainers to battle by the water. Before heading to Nimbasa City, take the time to wander around the entire area and battle.



The Sandstorm never stops

On Route 4, the weather is always Sandstorm during a battle. Pokémon that aren't Rock-, Ground-, or Steel-type will take damage from the Sandstorm every turn. Check frequently to make sure your Pokémon have enough HP left.

Route 4

Meet Cheren after heading north

Head north from the Castelia City gate, and you will find Cheren waiting for you. He will talk to you when you approach him and challenge you to a Pokémon battle to see which of you is stronger. Challenge him after you've restored your Pokémon's HP in the prefab house.

Pokémon Training



Pokémon hide in the dark sand

As you travel through the desert, you'll notice the sand comes in different colors. When you walk in the darker sand, you can run into wild Pokémon. So if you want to catch Pokémon, walk in the dark sand...but if your team is worn out, stick to the pale sand to avoid battles.



Heal your Pokémon at the prefab house

There's a prefab house on the west side of the route after you leave Castelia City. If you talk to the woman inside the house, she will restore your Pokémon's health. If your Pokémon were hurt in the Sandstorm or in battles with Pokémon Trainers, heal them at the prefab house.





Step 4

4 A call from Professor Juniper

The Xtransceiver rings after you defeat Cheren in battle. It's from Professor Juniper. Bianca doesn't pick up, so there's no image for her. Professor Juniper says she will be waiting at the gate to Nimbasa City to the north of Route 4.



Dig your way out of caves

Get TM28 Dig in the prefab house to the north. When you teach Dig to a Pokémon, you can use it to return instantly to the entrance of a cave you are in. It has the same effect as Escape Rope, so it is very useful.

Step 5

Visit the Desert Resort

Route 4 has two exits on the north side, and you can visit the Desert Resort by taking the western exit. It's a good place to make your Pokémon stronger before heading to Nimbasa City. You can't get past the first floor of the Relic Castle yet (p. 102), though, so head back to Route 4 when you get there.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Step 6

Get Ultra Balls from Professor Juniper

When you enter the gate to Nimbasa City, Professor Juniper is there, just like she said she'd be. The Professor gives both you and Cheren ten Ultra Balls. These high-performance balls catch Pokémon more easily than Great Balls.

Pokémon Training



Thanks, Mom!

According to Cheren, your mom and his mom, and Bianca's mom, too—asked Professor Juniper to give you the Pokédex. The three of you were able to set off on your adventure because your mothers wanted you to see the world!



Go north to Nimbasa City

Professor Juniper leaves to look for Bianca. Saying he's going to catch more Pokémon, Cheren returns to Route 4. Your next destination is Nimbasa City (p. 105). Continue north from the gate, and head for the next city!



Catch Pokémon in the water

You'll find a small beach at the west end of Route 4. If you have learned the hidden move Surf, visit this area to catch Pokémon. After finishing the main story, you become able to fish, and you can catch different types of Pokémon!



It is a popular place for tourists, but too harsh to be a resort

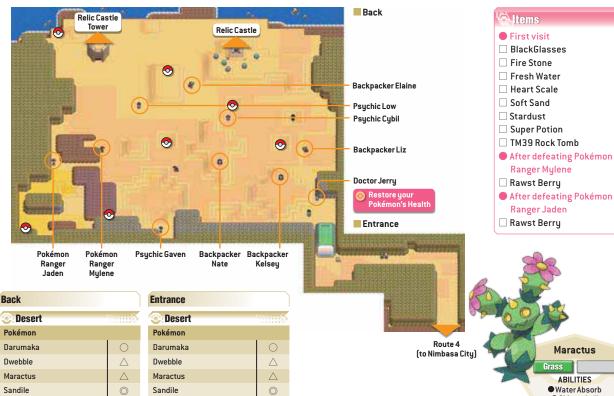
Desert Resort

Scraggy



The Desert Resort is a huge desert with a small entrance area before the gate. The sandstorm always rages in the desert. At the back are the Relic Castle and the Relic Castle Tower. Ancient Pokémon statues are quietly watching the entrance of the castle.





Sigilyph

Have Doctor Jerry heal your Pokémon

You'll find Doctor Jerry standing close to the entrance gate. After you beat him in a Pokémon battle, he'll heal all your Pokémon. Talk to him again after defeating him, and he'll always be willing to heal your Pokémon. If your Pokémon are hurt, take advantage of his kind offer.

Pokémon Training



Get Berries from Trainers

Defeat the Pokémon Rangers Mylene and Jaden to receive Rawst Berries. Mylene and Jaden are in the southwest of the far side of the resort. Be sure to battle them, because Rawst Berries can come in very handy at times.

Proceed while battling Trainers

A lot of Pokémon Trainers wait at the far side of the resort. Battle all the Trainers as you collect items. Pokémon can easily get low on HP due to Pokémon battles and the Sandstorm weather condition (p. 34). You'll want to make sure to heal your Pokémon frequently.



You meet a traveler from the Hoenn region

There is a traveler from the Hoenn region near the center of the far side of the resort. He blurts out. "Go-Goggles." He's talking about goggles to protect your eyes from the sandstorm. Unlike the sandstorm in the Hoenn region, you don't have to wear goggles here, so don't worry.

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Enter the Relic Castle near the statues

Head for the far side of the resort, and you'll see the entrance to the Relic Castle. Ancient Pokémon statues surround the entrance. During your adventure, when you're on the way to Nimbasa City, you can explore only the first floor, but enter the castle anyway (p. 102).



You can't go further in the tower yet

On the west side of the Relic Castle entrance, you'll see a tower entrance. Go in if you want, but you won't be able to go downstairs because a ledge blocks you. You'll be able to travel further in after you finish the main story (p. 190).

After visiting Dragonspiral Tower

Follow Cheren and enter the castle

When you're about to enter the Relic Castle, Cheren stops you. According to Cheren, Alder has already entered the castle. Follow after Alder in order to get a clue about the Light Stone (Dark Stone).





Ancient ruins with a glorious history, buried in the sand as time went by

Relic Castle

Pokémon Training



The Relic Castle is comprised of ancient ruins buried in the sand. The floor has quicksand here and there, and if you try to run through it, you'll be caught in the sand and fall to the lower floor. At first, you can go only halfway because the deeper levels are buried in sand.



First visit

■ Max Revive ☐ PP Up ☐ Sun Stone

After visiting the **Dragonspiral Tower** ☐ Max Potion

☐ TM30 Shadow Ball

1F • B1F • Tower 1F Inside

Sandile

B2F-B5F **⊙**:Inside

Cofagrigus

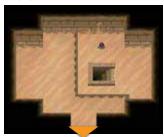
Krokorok

☐ Cover Fossil / Plume Fossil



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

RELIC CASTLE (6)



Desert Resort You can't reach the stairs from this entrance because they're on the wrong side of a one-way

■ B1F









Team Plasma Grunt



Team Plasma

Team Plasma

Pokémon Training









You can enter here after finishing the main story (p. 190).



Fall through quicksand to reach B1F

You can reach B1F through the quicksand on 1F. If you walk to the center or try to run through it, you will be caught in the quicksand. If you want to pass without getting caught in the quicksand, walk along the edge. After picking up the item on B1F, go back to 1F again and proceed.



Get a Pokémon Fossil

Speak to a Backpacker on the west side of 1F. She will give you a Cover Fossil or Plume Fossil. The Cover Fossil can be restored to Tirtouga, and the Plume Fossil can be restored to Archen. Choose whichever one you want, and it's yours!



Have a Pokémon Fossil restored

The Cover Fossil or Plume Fossil that you received can be restored to a Pokémon at the Nacrene Museum in Nacrene City. Make room in your party, go to the museum, and speak to a woman on the right side of the reception counter.



Relic Castle

Step 3

You can't move further yet

During your adventure, on the way to Nimbasa City, a Worker in front of the stairs stops you if you approach the stairs on the west side. You can't go deeper yet, because the rest of the castle is buried in the sand. Head back to Route 4 and continue on to Nimbasa City (p. 98).

Pokémon Training





Tirtouga



Archen

After visiting Dragonspiral Tower

Move on while battling Team Plasma

Come back again after visiting Dragonspiral Tower, and you will be able to proceed to B1F using the stairs. Fall through the quicksand and head down to B5F. Team Plasma Grunts are waiting for you on the way. Keep heading down while battling them and collecting items.



After visiting Dragonspiral Tower

Ghetsis is waiting for you on **B5F**

When you arrive at B5F, Alder and Ghetsis are there. Ghetsis tells you that the Light Stone (Dark Stone) is not here. Ghetsis leaves after telling you to find the other Legendary Pokémon so you can fight the king.



After visiting Dragonspiral Tower

Return to the entrance with Alder and Cheren

After Ghetsis has left, Alder reveals his concerns about battling N as a Champion and about the Light Stone (Dark Stone). Cheren suggests going outside. Alder keeps worrying about the situation.



Why does Alder continue his journey?

According to Ghetsis, after Alder lost a Pokémon (one that had been his partner for many years) to illness, he ordered the Elite Four to protect the Pokémon League, and he's been traveling in the Unova region ever since. What's on his mind in his travels?

After visiting Dragonspiral

A call from Professor Juniper

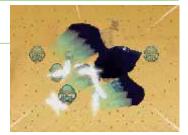
When you're talking with Alder and Cheren at the entrance of the Relic Castle, your Xtransceiver rings. It's an urgent call from Professor Juniper, asking you to come to the museum in Nacrene City immediately.



After visiting Dragonspiral Tower

Head to Nacrene City using Fly

After the call from Professor Juniper, Alder heads straight for Nacrene City. Cheren decides to stay and check the Relic Castle one more time. You'll want to head for Nacrene City using Fly (p. 86).



You can go further after finishing the main story

On B5F in the Relic Castle, you'll find an entrance to the inner part of the castle. However, as the entrance is above the ground, you can't go further at this time. You'll be able to go further after finishing the main story, because the sand will be piled up by then [n 190]



bustling city of entertainment, with many theme parks

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Nimbasa City

Pokémon Training



Nimbasa City is a huge city of leisure, with various facilities such as the Battle Subway, the Musical Theater, and an amusement park. Come here to get your fourth Gym Badge.



Items First visit □ Bicycle Fresh Water ☐ HM04 Strength ■ Macho Brace ☐ Prop Case ☐ Sun Stone

- ☐ TM49 Echoed Voice Us. Recorder ☐ X Attack
- If your friendship with the Pokémon at the head of your party is strong ☐ Soothe Bell
- After defeating the Nimbasa City Gym ■ Bolt Badge
- ☐ TM72 Volt Switch

Step

Get a Bicycle from the Day-

Route 4 (to Castelia City)

When you arrive at the city, Team Plasma Grunts are attacking the Day-Care Man right in front of you. Challenge a Team Plasma Grunt to battle so you can rescue the Day-Care Man! If you win, the Day-Care Man gives you a Bicycle as a token of his gratitude. You can travel a lot faster by Bicycle than by running!





Bicycle

Step

You meet Bianca, who's visiting the city

After you rescue the Day-Care Man from Team Plasma, Bianca tells you that there are many facilities in Nimbasa City, then goes on her way to see the Musical Theater. Catch up with Bianca later.



You can leave two Pokémon at the Pokémon Day Care

After you help the Day-Care Man, you can leave two Pokémon at the Pokémon Day Care on Route 3 (p. 76). If you leave the right sort of Pokémon, a Pokémon Egg may be found.



Get a Vs. Recorder at the **Battle Subway**

When you are about to enter the Battle Subway, a woman jumps out of the building. She gives you a Vs. Recorder. It enables you to record a video of a battle in the Battle Subway or a Link Battle with a friend.





Vs. Recorder

Challenge the Battle Subway

In the Battle Subway, you can get on a real winning streak battling Pokémon Trainers. For every seven Trainers you defeat, you'll get Battle Points (BP). Exchange Battle Points for items useful in battles. The more Trainers you challenge, the more BP you can collect!

Pokémon Training



There is a train to Anville Town, too

In the Gear Station of the Battle Subway, there is a train to Anville Town, a small town located at the west end of the Unova region (p. 109). Take a train and visit Anville

Step 5

Visit the Battle Institute

You can take a Battle Test in the Battle Institute on the west side of the Pokémon Center. However, the test is available only after you finish the main story. For now, continue your adventure, finish the main story, then come back and visit the Battle Institute again (p. 203).



Use Strength to get an item

Trainer obtained an HWO4 Strangth

You can get an item by using Strength on Route 2 (p. 66) Once you get Strength, zip over to Route 2 to get a Rare Candy.



Get Strength from a guy in a

Go to a house on the north side of the Battle Institute and talk to a guy in the house. He'll give you HMO4 Strength. It's a hidden move that lets a Pokémon push a big boulder, and even drop a boulder into a hole. Don't miss it!



Baseball, soccer, and football are played in Big Stadium on the north side of the city. Which sport is played depends on the day (p. 6). You can also enjoy battles with Pokémon Trainers on the field during practice. Visit there to train your Pokémon.



You can battle Trainers every day

In Big Stadium and Small Court, the level of your foe's Pokémon goes up (and the Pokémon get stronger) after you get three, five, and seven Gym Badges, and after finishing the main story. Also, the number of Trainers increases. Keep yourself fighting fit by going there every day.



Visit Small Court

Tennis and basketball are played in Small Court to the west of Big Stadium. Tennis and basketball alternate, depending on the day (p. 6). On the court during practice, you can enjoy Pokémon battles with athletes and Pokémon Trainers.



You can't battle during a game

In Big Stadium and Small Court, there are games at certain times every day. During these periods, you can't battle with Trainers in the practice area. The timing of a game depends on which sport is being played, so check the calendar (p. 6) when planning your challenges.





Get a Prop Case from the owner of the Musical Theater

When you enter the Musical Theater, Bianca is waiting for you. Go with Bianca to the back of the theater. The owner of the Musical Theater will give you a Prop Case. You can use it to store Props to Dress Up your Pokémon.





Prop Case

Step 🤇 [] Try the Pokémon Musical

At the Pokémon Musical, you can Dress Up your Pokémon with Props and let it participate in a musical. When the show ends, you can receive a Prop. Participate in the musical many times, collect many Props, and enjoy the fun of Dressing Up your Pokémon.

Pokémon Training



Bianca stops you if you try to leave the citu

If you try to get out of the city before visiting the Musical Theater, Bianca will stop you, and you two will go to the Musical Theater. Leave the city after visiting the Musical Theater.

Step <

Meet Bianca's very worried dad

When you leave the Musical Theater, you'll see Bianca's dad waiting outside. He's been worrying about Bianca's welfare, and has come to take her back home. The Gym Leader Elesa can't stand watching them quarrel. She intervenes, and in the end, persuades Bianca's dad that Bianca will be fine.



N's title changes

Go to the amusement park to Step < 2 see N again

At the amusement park on the east side of the city, you'll run into N. He asks you to ride the Ferris wheel. When you take a ride with him, he reveals that he is the king of Team Plasma. He's ready to battle you to buy time for some Team Plasma Grunts to flee.



After N reveals that he is the king of Team Plasma, his title changes from Pokémon Trainer to Team Plasma. You'll pick up on this if you pay close attention next time you start a Pokémon battle with N.

Battle with Team Plasma's N!

N uses Pokémon that have different weaknesses. For Sandile, Water- and Fighting-type moves; for Darumaka, Water-, Ground-, and Rock-type moves; for Sigilyph, Electric- and Rock-type moves; and for Scraggy, Fightingand Flying-type moves are effective.



Step (13)

Get a Macho Brace from an Infielder

3

Go to the gate to Route 16 on the east side of the city, and speak to an Infielder in the gate. He will give you a Macho Brace. If you let a Pokémon hold it, it reduces Speed temporarily, but promotes strong growth.





Step <

Train your Pokémon before going to the Pokémon Gym

Before challenging the Nimbasa City Gym, spend a little time on Route 16 (p. 110). You can get your Pokémon ready for the Gym battle ahead by facing off against the Pokémon Trainers you'll encounter. When you're done exploring Route 16 and Lostlorn Forest, head back to Nimbasa City.

Pokémon Training

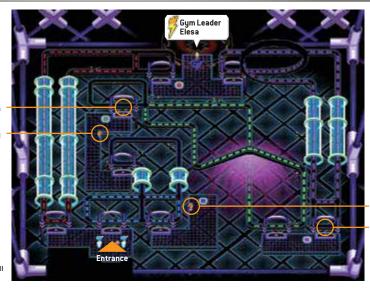


You can go to the **Driftveil Drawbridge** after defeating the Nimbasa City Gym

You can take Route 5 even before you challenge the Nimbasa City Gym. However, you can't cross Driftveil Drawbridge on the west side of Route 5 until you beat Nimbasa City Gym.

Gym battle 4

Nimbasa City Gym Battle



Lady Magnolia

Ladu Colette

Rich Boy Rolan and Lady Colette will arrive in the roller coaster cars.

Rich Boy Rolan Rich Boy Cody

Nimbasa City Gym Leader Elesa

If your Pokémon have Rock-, Ice-, and Ground-type moves, vou'll have the advantage.

In this Gym, you'll ride the roller coasters and proceed by pressing the switches to change the path. Elesa's Zebstrika is weak against Ground-type moves, and her two Emolga are weak against Ice- and Rock-type moves but immune to Ground-type moves. If you don't have any of these moves, use TMs to teach your Pokémon Rock Tomb or Dig. And watch out for the new move called Volt Switch—after the user attacks, it immediately changes places with another Pokémon on Elesa's team!

Electric-type Pokémon User

Recommended Level for your Pokémon

Elesa's Pokémon

🖸 Emolga 🗸 Lv. 25 Moves to watch out for: © Emolga ♀ Iv 25 Moves to watch out for Electric Flying Lv. 27 Moves to watch out for 🗖 Zebstrika 🗸 **Volt Switch** Electric

TM 72 Volt 9

It lets the Pokémon switch with a different Pokémon in the party after attacking.

Bolt Badge

Pokémon up to Lv. 50, including those received in trades, will obey you.

After beating

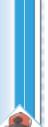
Go west toward Route 5

The next destination is Driftveil City, where you can get your fifth Gym Badge. Head west from Nimbasa City, passing through the gate on the west side of the city and over to Route 5 (p. 112).



You can ride the Ferris wheel with a Trainer

After you defeat the Nimbasa City Gym, a Pokémon Trainer will show up in front of the Ferris wheel. After you defeat the Trainer, you can ride the Ferris wheel together. The Trainer changes depending on the season and your gender, so you'll get to enjoy different conversations during your Ferris wheel rides.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NIMBASA CITY (*)

city with a rail yard where trains park for an overhaul

Anville Town

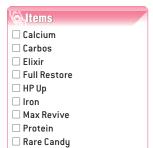
Pokémon Training



☐ Zinc

Anville Town is a small town. You can get there by riding a train from the Gear Station in Nimbasa City. There is a turntable to change the direction of trains at the center of the town. The town gets lively with tourists on Saturdays and Sundays, when the trains come through.





 A Depot Agent in Anville Town will give you items depending on your success in the Battle Subway, If you have a seven-win streak in the Battle Subway, you'll get a different item. If you have two or more seven-win streaks, the number of items increases. The Depot Agent can give you as many as 10 items at once!







Visit on weekends to trade items

On Saturdays and Sundays, people who trade items visit the town. One person gives you a Revive in exchange for two Escape Ropes; another gives you a PP Up in exchange for a Star Piece; and another gives you a Full Restore in exchange for 20 Poké Balls.



Listen to the flute player

On the bridge above the turntable, a woman is playing a flute. Move toward the woman, and the sound will be louder. If you walk away from her, the sound will be softer.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

ROUTE 16 • LOSTLORN FOREST

Many who visit Nimbasa City drop by to take a break

Route 16 • Lostlorn Forest



Route 16 is a short road connecting Nimbasa City and Marvelous Bridge. Through a break in the trees on the north side, you'll find Lostlorn Forest. It is said that people get lost there somehow, although the forest is not very big.

Field Moves Needed

Cut Surf Strength Waterfix





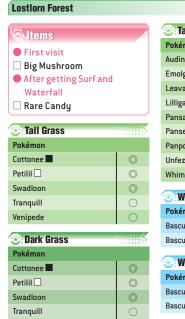
Whimsicott

Grass

ABILITIES

Prankster
Infiltrator

1 You can visit after finishing the main story (p. 201).



Toll Cross (westling)	•••••
Tall Grass (rustling)	:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	\triangle
Leavanny	\triangle
Lilligant	\triangle
Pansage	\triangle
Pansear	\triangle
Panpour	\triangle
Unfezant	\triangle
Whimsicott	Δ
Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Water Surface (ripples)	·······
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	



Venipede

Lostlorn Forest After finishing the main story • Fishing Pokémon Basculin (Blue-Striped Form) Basculin (Red-Striped Form) 0 Fishing (ripples) Pokémon Basculin (Blue-Striped Form) Basculin (Red-Striped Form) Goldeen 0



Pokémon Training

Head east while battling Pokémon Trainers

Route 16 is a short road, but six Pokémon Trainers are waiting to battle you there. One of them is behind a boulder that can be moved by using Strength. Battle all the Trainers and make your Pokémon strong in preparation for the Nimbasa City Gym Battle.



A mysterious woman lives in Lostlorn Forest

Head through the trees to the north to find the entrance to Lostlorn Forest. You'll come to a camper parked at the north end, but the woman inside won't respond if you speak to her. According to the nearby Backpacker, she seems to think living quietly by herself is important.



You can't go to Marvelous Bridge yet

There is an entrance to Marvelous Bridge on the east side of Route 16. However, you can't enter because the bridge is being checked. You can go to Marvelous Bridge after finishing the main story (p. 201).



Come back later for a Rare Candy

If you go back to Lostlorn Forest after getting HM06 Waterfall on Route 18, you can get a Rare Candy by climbing the waterfall. Don't forget to go back for it!

Go back to Nimbasa City Step <

Go back to Nimbasa City after exploring Route 16 and Lostlorn Forest. Now, you can challenge the Nimbasa City Gym at last (p. 108). Head to the Gym after visiting the Pokémon Center to heal your Pokémon.





List of Trainers

Pokémon Training

Route 5



Route 5 is a short road connecting Nimbasa City and Driftveil Drawbridge, but it is very lively because a lot of performers gather there. This is where you'll meet the Champion of the Unova region, Alder.



Oltems	
☐ Great Ball	
☐ Hyper Potion	
☐ Revive	
☐ Zinc	

After defeating Musician

Preston 🗌 Electric Guitar

Tall Grass	
Pokémon	*******
Gothita	
Liepard	0
Minccino	0
Solosis 🗌	0
Trubbish	0

Tall Grass (rustling)	- Tarristo
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Cinccino	
Emolga	

O: Dark Grass	·····
Pokémon	
Gothita 🔳	0
Liepard	0
Minccino	0
Solosis	0
Trubbish	

Items that the Maid in the camper buys

Items	Price
Aguav Berry	20
Apicot Berry	20
Aspear Berry	20
Babiri Berry	20
Charti Berry	20
Cheri Berry	20
Chesto Berry	20
Chilan Berry	20
Chople Berry	20
Coba Berry	20
Colbur Berry	20
Figy Berry	20
Ganlon Berry	20
Grepa Berry	20
Haban Berry	20
Hondew Berry	20
lapapa Berry	20
Kasib Berry	20
Kebia Berry	20
Kelpsy Berry	20
Leppa Berry	20

ampor buyo	
Items	Price
Liechi Berry	20
Lum Berry	20
Mago Berry	20
Occa Berry	20
Oran Berry	20
Passho Berry	20
Payapa Berry	20
Pecha Berry	20
Persim Berry	20
Petaya Berry	20
Pomeg Berry	20
Qualot Berry	20
Rawst Berry	20
Rindo Berry	20
Salac Berry	20
Shuca Berry	20
Sitrus Berry	20
Tamato Berry	20
Tanga Berry	20
Wacan Berry	20
Wiki Berry	20

Items	11106
Yache Berry	20
Sweet Heart	100
Fresh Water	200
Leftovers	200
Lucky Egg	200
Stick	200
Soda Pop	300
Lemonade	350
Belue Berry	500
Bluk Berry	500
Cornn Berry	500
Durin Berry	500
Honey	500
Magost Berry	500
Moomoo Milk	500
Nanab Berry	500
Nomel Berry	500
Pamtre Berry	500
Pinap Berry	500
Rabuta Berry	500
Razz Berry	500

tems	Price
Spelon Berry	500
TinyMushroom	500
Watmel Berry	500
Wepear Berry	500
Berry Juice	1,500
Casteliacone	2,000
Lava Cookie	4,000
Old Gateau	4,000
Big Mushroom	5,000
RageCandyBar	6,000
Shoal Salt	7,000
Rare Candy	10,000
BalmMushroom	25,000
Custap Berry	30,000
Enigma Berry	30,000
Jaboca Berry	30,000
Lansat Berry	30,000
Micle Berry	30,000
Rowap Berry	30,000
Starf Berry	30,000



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Cheren challenges you to battle

When you head west from Nimbasa City, Cheren catches up with you. It seems Cheren also got a Bolt Badge in Nimbasa City. He wants to see which of you is stronger, so he challenges you to battle.

Pokémon Training





Step 2

Meet the Champion of the Unova region

When you head west with Elesa as your guide, you meet a man with red hair. He is the Champion of the Unova region, Alder. Cheren tells Alder that the purpose of his journey is to become the Champion, but he can't answer why he wants to become the Champion.



Step 3

Team up with Cheren to have a Tag Battle

Cheren can't find a purpose for his journey other than striving to become stronger, so Alder asks you and Cheren to have a battle with two Preschoolers. Team up with Cheren and battle. Afterwards, Alder teaches Cheren that some people are happy just being with Pokémon.



Have your Pokémon healed before moving forward

After the Tag Battle with the Preschoolers, go back to Nimbasa City before battling Pokémon Trainers on Route 5. Drop by the Pokémon Center to restore your Pokémon's health



Thanks to Elesa, the drawbridge is lowered

When you head west with Elesa as a guide, she contacts somebody at the foot of the bridge and asks them to lower the drawbridge. Once the drawbridge is lowered and people can cross, Cheren leaves for Driftveil City.



Calling Clay

Elesa contacted the Driftveil City Gym Leader, Clay. As the Gym Leader, Clay is also a manager of Driftveil Drawbridge.



Explore Route 5

Before going to Driftveil Drawbridge, battle Pokémon Trainers and collect items on Route 5. Battle all seven Trainers and make your Pokémon strong to prepare for the next Gym Battle.



Get a Prop for a Musical

Defeat Musician Preston, and he will give you an Electric Guitar Prop. Props are used to Dress Up Pokémon in the Pokémon Musical in Nimbasa City.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Sell a lot of food to the Maid

The Maid in the camper buys various food items from you. "Food" includes Berries and other items with food-like names. Check the list and sell various items to the Maid (p. 112).

Pokémon Training



List of Trainers

It's a better deal than a Poké Mart

Except BalmMushroom, you can sell items that the Maid buys in a Poké Mart, too. However, the prices that the Maid pays for the items are much higher than a Poké Mart, It's a much better deal to sell items to the Maid.



Head west and cross Driftveil Drawbridge

If you go west on Route 5, you'll see the Driftveil Drawbridge that was just lowered. Driftveil City, located on the west side of the drawbridge, has the fifth Pokémon Gym. Cross Driftveil Drawbridge to head to Driftveil City.





A drawbridge raises and lowers, depending on the ship schedules

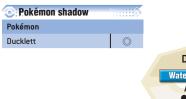
Driftveil Drawbridge



Driftveil Drawbridge is a bridge that raises and lowers depending on the ship schedules. Driftveil Drawbridge is managed by the Driftveil City Gym Leader, Clay. Above the bridge, flying Pokémon come and go.









Step

Cross the bridge to Driftveil City

Thanks to Elesa and Clay, Driftveil Drawbridge is now lowered. Cross the bridge to head west. Once you finish crossing the bridge, you are right in front of Driftveil City (p. 116). The bridge is very long and you have to travel far. Ride your Bicycle to cross the bridge quickly.



Step on a shadow of a flying Pokémon

You can see shadows of flying Pokémon on the bridge. Step on these shadows. You will get various kinds of Wings (p. 29) and Ducklett may jump out. If you see a shadow, make sure to step on it.

Pokémon That Learn Many of the Field Moves

Some Pokémon can learn a variety of field moves such as Strength and Surf. With these Pokémon on your team, you'll have no trouble getting anywhere in the Unova region. Take them with you and let them support your journey.

Use these Pokémon to make travel easy



Watchog is found on Route 7. You could also raise a Patrat found on Route 1 up to Lv. 20, when it evolves.



You can get Basculin from a boy in a house in Driftveil City in exchange for Minccino.



You may find Ducklett when you step on a Pokémon shadow on Driftveil Drawbridge.



can find the Fossil on 1F in the Relic Castle.

Frillish

Usable field moves

Flash

Surf

Water

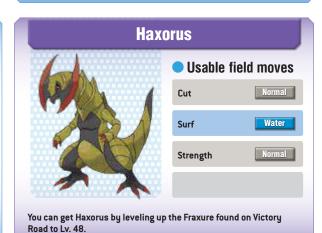
Water

Dive

Water

Frillish may be found when you use Surf on Route 17 and on the

water surface of Route 4.



A port town distributing many goods, and a gateway to the Unova region

Driftveil City

Pokémon Training



Driftveil City is a port where various goods are distributed. There is a market in the city where you can buy items that you can't buy anywhere else. Come here to earn your fifth Gym Badge.









Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Frillish	0
	-
Water Surface (ripples)	······
Pokémon	
Alomomola	0
Jellicent	\triangle





Clay asks you to find Team Plasma

When you enter the city, the Gym Leader Clay and Cheren are standing there. Clay is upset because when they lowered the bridge, the Team Plasma guys they had caught escaped. Clay asks you to find Team Plasma.



Sometimes it rains

Driftveil City's weather changes depending on the date and season. Rain can fall during spring, summer, and autumn, and snow or hail will sometimes fall during winter. When you visit the city, observe the changes in weather (p. 206).



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

DRIFTVEIL CITY (*)

Learn a special move in the Move Tutor's House

In the Move Tutor's House, if you have a strong bond with any of the three starter Pokémon, he will teach that Pokémon a battle-combo move. If these moves are used at the same time in a Double Battle or a Triple Battle, their power increases and they create a special effect.

Pokémon Training







Pignite

Battle-combo moves that can be learned and Pokémon in the Unova Pokédex that can learn those moves

Move	Effect	Pokémon
	When combined with Water Pledge or Fire Pledge, the power and effect will change.	Snivy
Grass Pledge	If combined with Water Pledge, the power will be 150 and it becomes a Grass-type move. It lowers the Speed of your foe's Pokémon for three turns.	Servine
	If combined with Fire Pledge, the power will be 150 and it becomes a Fire-type move. It damages all types except Fire for three turns.	Serperior
	When combined with Water Pledge or Grass Pledge, the power and effect will change.	Tepig
Fire Pledge	If combined with Water Pledge, the power will be 150 and it becomes a Water-type move. It boosts your team's chances of added move effects.	Pignite
If com	If combined with Grass Pledge, the power will be 150 and it becomes a Fire-type move. It damages all types except Fire for three turns.	Emboar
	When combined with Fire Pledge or Grass Pledge, the power and effect will change.	Oshawott
Water Pledge	If combined with Fire Pledge, the power will be 150 and it becomes a Water-type move. It boosts your team's chances of added move effects.	Dewott
1 louge	If combined with Grass Pledge, the power will be 150 and it becomes a Grass-type move. It lowers the Speed of your foe's Pokémon for three turns.	Samurott

Show a Pokémon she wants to see and get a Heart Scale

When you speak to a woman in a house on the west side of the Pokémon Center, she says that she wants to see a Pokémon that knows a certain move. If you show her a Pokémon she wants to see, she will give you a Heart Scale. You can speak to her every day to get a Heart Scale.



Your Pokémon can re-learn moves in Mistralton City

A Heart Scale is an item necessary to let your Pokémon remember one of the moves it has forgotten. If you want your Pokémon to remember one of the moves it has forgotten, go to the Move Family's House in Mistralton City and speak to the reminder girl (p. 130)



Learn Rotation (Triple) Battle

Charles is riding a motorcycle on the west side of the Driftveil Market. Speak to Charles. He will teach you Rotation (Triple) Battle, and you can also battle with him. Try out this new battle format!



Two new battle **formats**

Motorcyclist Charles teaches you Rotation Battle in Pokémon Black Version and Triple Battle in Pokémon White Version.



Enjoy shopping in the Driftveil Market

In the Driftveil Market, you can buy items that you can't buy anywhere else. These include Moomoo Milk and medicinal herbs such as Heal Powder and EnergyPowder. You can buy Moomoo Milk by the dozen!



Get a Shell Bell

An elderly man in a house on the east side of the Pokémon Center gives you a Shell Bell if your Pokédex's SEEN number is 50 or more. It restores the user's HP by one-eighth of the damage taken by the target.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

DRIFTVEIL CITY



Go to the Cold Storage to find Step **Team Plasma**

Clay asked you to find Team Plasma, and they seem to have fled into the Cold Storage on the south side of the city. You can't challenge the Driftveil City Gym to battle unless you find Team Plasma. Head south through the city and go to the Cold Storage (p. 121).

Pokémon Training



Get an Expert Belt

If you have a Pokémon at Lv. 30 or more in your party, a man with sunglasses in the Driftveil Market will give you an Expert Belt. This item boosts the power of supereffective moves.

After visiting the Cold Storage

Ghetsis takes Team Plasma

When you arrive at the Driftveil City Gym, Ghetsis is in front of the Gym demanding the handover of the Team Plasma members. Ghetsis threatens Clay, saying they have many, many more members around them. Clay has no choice but to comply with the demand, so Ghetsis leaves with the Team Plasma members.



The inside of the market is different

The fruit and flowers in the Driftveil Market are different between Pokémon Black Version and Pokémon White Version. If your friend is playing a different version, take a peek to see the changes!

B1F



Driftveil City Gym





Driftveil City Gym Leader

Inflict great damage using Water-, Fighting-, and Grasstype moves

Take the elevators up and down to move through the Gym. Clay's Krokorok is weak against Grass-, Water-, and Fighting-type moves, Excadrill is weak against Water- and Fighting-type moves, and Palpitoad is weak against Grass-type moves. If your Pokémon can learn Grass Knot and Scald, use these moves to target their weaknesses.

Clay's Pokémon

♥ Krokorok ♂	Lv. 29	moves to watch	out for:
Ground Dark		Swagger	Normal
© Excadrill ♂	Lv. 31	 Moves to watch 	out for:
Ground Steel		Rock Slide	Rock
Palpitoad ♂	Lv. 29	Moves to watch	out for:
Water Ground		Muddy Water	Water
(A)			



Quake Badge

Pokémon up to Lv. 60, including those received in trades, will obey you.

Unlike the other Gym Leaders, Clay won't give you a TM right after the battle. You'll get it when you meet him at the Chargestone Cave entrance (p. 126).

After beating the Driftveil City Gym

Bianca stops you and challenges you to a battle

When you are heading west to Mistralton City, Bianca stops you. At first, Bianca is distracted because she is so impressed by the fact that you won the Gym battle and got a Quake Badge. Then she regains her focus and challenges you to a Pokémon battle.

Pokémon Training





After beating **Get HM02 Fly from Bianca** the Driftveil City Gym

Win the battle with Bianca and she will give you HM02 Fly. This item allows you to fly instantly to any place you have already visited. Teach the move to a Pokémon right away so that you can move around the Unova region easily.



After beating the Driftveil City Gym **Go west towards Route 6**

The next destination is Mistralton City, where the sixth Pokémon Gym is located. You can get there by taking Route 6 on the west side of Driftveil City and passing the Chargestone Cave. Take Route 6 to Mistralton City (p. 124).



Use Surf to get an item

After getting HM03 Surf, you can go to an island with a lighthouse on the water. You can get an item there, so after you find Surf, visit Driftveil City again.



People Who Look After Pokémon

During your travels in Unova, you'll meet people who help you by raising your Pokémon's friendship, changing your Pokémon's nicknames, teaching your Pokémon moves, and more. If you forget where to find one of these people, check this page.



These people will help you every day...



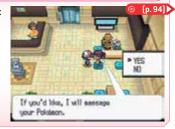
PEOPLE WHO LOOK AFTER POKÉMON

By raising your Pokémon's friendship

Pokémon Training

Where Pokémon Massage in Castelia City

Speak to a woman on the first floor of a building on Castelia Street, and she will raise the friendship of a Pokémon in your party.





By changing your Pokémon's nicknames

Where Name Rater in Castelia City

Speak to an elderly man on the first floor of a building on the path to Route 4, and he will change your Pokémon's nickname.





By rating your friendship with your Pokémon

Where Pokémon Fan Club in Icirrus City

Speak to a woman in the Pokémon Fan Club, and she will rate your friendship with one of the Pokémon in your party.





By helping your Pokémon forget the moves they know

(Where Move Family's House in Mistralton City

Speak to the Move Deleter at the Move Family's House, and he will let your Pokémon forget any move, including an HM.





By helping your Pokémon remember moves they've forgotten

Where Move Family's House in Mistralton City

Give one Heart Scale to the reminder girl at the Move Family's House, and she will help your Pokémon remember a forgotten move.





By teaching your Pokémon battle-combo moves

Where Move Tutor's House in Driftveil City

If Snivy, Tepig, Oshawott, or their evolved form has a strong bond with you, he will teach you a battlecombo move.





By teaching your Pokémon ultimate moves

Where Ultimate Move Tutor's House on Route 13

If you are good friends with Serperior, Emboar, or Samurott, he will teach it an ultimate move.





By teaching the strongest Dragon-type move to your Dragon-type Pokémon

Where Drayden's House in Opelucid City

If a Dragon-type Pokémon, such as Druddigon or Fraxure, has a strong bond with you, Iris (Drayden) will teach that Pokémon the move Draco Meteor.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

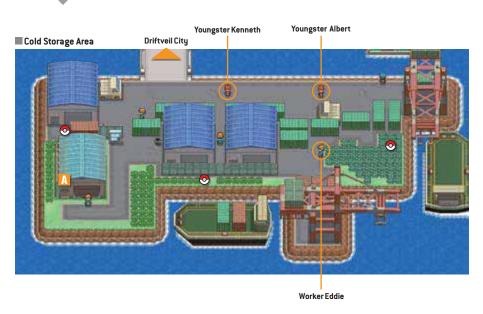


Cold Storage

Pokémon Training



Cold Storage is where a lot of goods are stored before they are distributed in Driftveil City. Stretches of tall grass grow in this area, and you will find various kinds of Pokémon. Search this area to find Team Plasma.







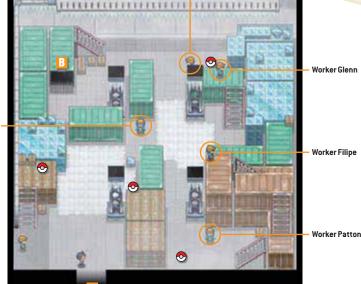


■ Storage Building





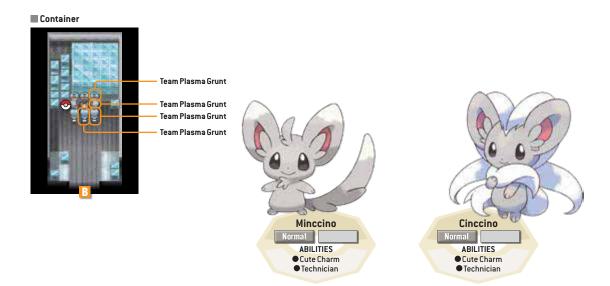




Worker Ryan

Pokémon Training





Step 1

Collect items while battling Trainers

Three Pokémon Trainers are waiting at the Cold Storage area. Before you enter the storage building, battle these Trainers and collect items. Some Pokémon in the tall grass here are difficult to find elsewhere. Catch and register them in your Pokédex.



Find items with the Dowsing MCHN

The Cold Storage area has many hidden items. If you use the Dowsing MCHN, you can find these items!

Step 2

Cheren shows up in front of the storage building

When you approach the west end of the Cold Storage area, Cheren shows up. He will check the inside of the storage building with you. Enter the building. If your Pokémon are hurt, go back to the Pokémon Center in Driftveil City to restore their health first.



Step 3

The icy floor makes walking tricky

The floor in the storage building is frozen and icy. Once you step on the ice, you can't stop until you hit a wall or an obstacle. Think carefully about how to get where you want to go before moving.



You can't get anywhere from the container by the entrance

There is a ladder to the roof of a container just north of the storage entrance. It looks like you can proceed from here, but you can't because of the ice floor. Use the ladder to exit the storage building after catching Team Plasma.

Proceed while battling Trainers

You can't move freely in the storage building because the floor is covered with ice. There is a single path through the building, so slide on the ice floor and battle Pokémon Trainers along the way. The direction you should aim is the container on the west end. You'll meet five Trainers in total.

Pokémon Training



Step

Team Plasma hiding in a container

Enter the container in the west end of the storage building and you'll find the hiding place of Zinzolin, one of the Seven Sages. Zinzolin has been keeping warm by huddling in the middle of a group of Team Plasma Grunts. When he notices you and Cheren coming in, he commands the Grunts to attack you.



Step 6

Battle the Team Plasma Grunts

The eight Team Plasma Grunts who were surrounding Zinzolin stand right in front of you. Cheren takes care of the four on the left side. Speak to each of the four on the right side and challenge them to a battle. Defeat the four Team Plasma Grunts, and Team Plasma will surrender.



Use items to heal your Pokémon

You will battle the Team Plasma Grunts one by one, so you can heal your Pokémon between the battles. If your Pokémon are hurt, don't push them too hard. Instead, restore their HP by using items before battling the next Grunt.



Clay takes Team Plasma away

When you beat Team Plasma, Clay enters the container with a lot of Workers. The Workers take Team Plasma away. Clay tells you to come challenge his Gym as he promised, and then leaves.



Step 8

Go back to Driftveil City and challenge the Gym

Now that you've defeated Team Plasma, you can finally challenge the Gym. Head north from the Cold Storage and have your Pokémon healed in the Pokémon Center. After your Pokémon are healed, visit the Driftveil City Gym on the north side of the city (p. 118).



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Route 6



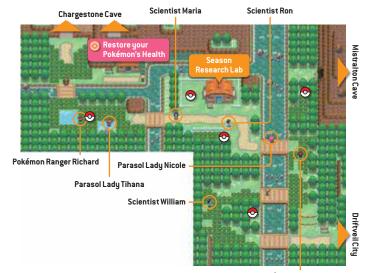
Route 6 is a road surrounded by rich nature with a flowing river and green trees. The Season Research Lab stands at the center. The Scientists are conducting research on Pokémon whose form changes depending on the season.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

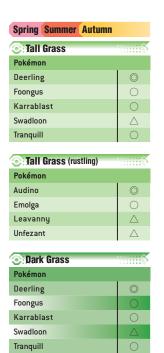
ROUTE 6 (



All Seasons

Pokémon Ranger Shanti

After finishing the main story





Karrablast

Swadloon Vanillite

Water Surface	Fishing
Pokémon	Pokémon
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form) 🗌 🔘	Basculin (Blue-Striped Form) ☐ ○
Basculin (Red-Striped Form) ■ 🔘	Basculin (Red-Striped Form) ■
	Poliwag
Water Surface (ripples)	Poliwhirl
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	Fishing (ripples)
Basculin (Red-Striped Form) ☐ ◎	Pokémon
-	Basculin (Blue-Striped Form) ■
	Basculin (Red-Striped Form)
	Poliwhirl
	Politoed \triangle
•	•



Stop by the Season Research Lab

At the Season Research Lab, research is being conducted on Deerling, which changes form depending on the season (p. 248). The researcher on the left will ask you to assist him with his research when you talk to him. Put a Deerling in your party and show it to him. You can catch Deerling on Route 6.



Show Deerling's four forms to the researchers

Show the researcher at the Season Research Lab Deerling's four forms—Spring Form, Summer Form, Autumn Form, and Winter Form—and he will give you a Leaf Stone as a thank you.

Step

Heal your Pokémon on the way

Keep heading west and talk to the woman in a house on Route 6. She will heal your Pokémon. Feel free to stop by and heal the Pokémon in your party when they are hurt during battles in the area with Pokémon Trainers or wild Pokémon.



Get Berries by defeating Trainers

Defeat the Pokémon Rangers Shanti and Richard in battle to get Cheri Berries. Shanti is on the eastern part of Route 6 and Richard is on the west side. Be sure to battle them and get Cheri Berries.

Step <

Head for Chargestone Cave

Your next destination, Mistralton City, lies just beyond Chargestone Cave. Continue north from the westernmost part of Route 6 and you will reach the entrance to Chargestone Cave (p. 126). Heal your Pokémon at the house, and continue on your way north.



Don't be fooled by Foongus!

Sometimes, when you check items that have fallen on the ground, a Foongus will pop out and surprise you. With their Poké Ball caps, the Foongus look just like fallen items! The battle comes out of nowhere, so be ready for a battle whenever picking up an item.

After getting

Head for Mistralton Cave after gathering items

If you use Surf to cross the water, you can reach Mistralton Cave on the easternmost part of the route (p. 143). After you collect the items in places that can only be reached if you use Surf, head for Mistralton Cave, where a legendary Pokémon is rumored to reside.



Look for items every time you visit

Use the Dowsing MCHN every time you visit Route 6. Even if you collect all of the items here, new TinyMushrooms sprout after a couple of days. Try to find the other locations in the Unova region where items are hidden.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

A cave where electrically charged stones float

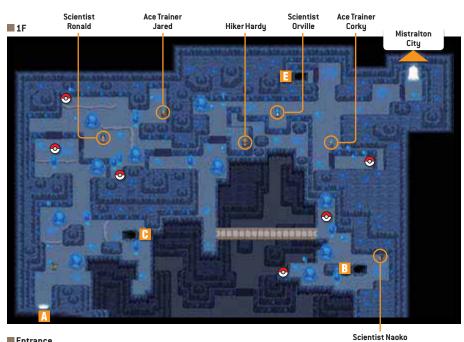
Chargestone Cave

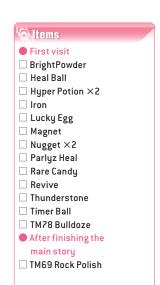
Pokémon Training

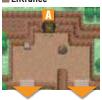


Chargestone Cave is where electrically charged stones wait around every corner. Pathways are blocked by stones, and there are ledges as well. The exit will lead you to Mistralton City.









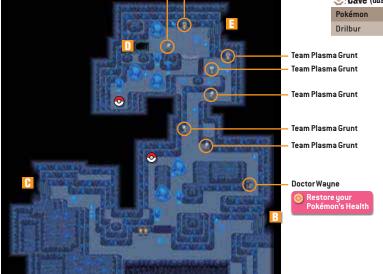




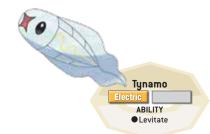
Cave (dust cloud)	
Pokémon	
Drilbur	0

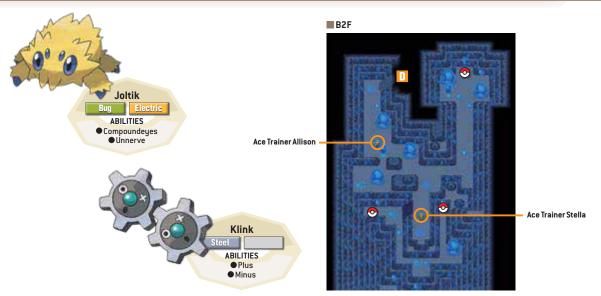
DEI	
© Cave	
Pokémon	
Boldore	
Ferroseed	0
Joltik	0
Klink	
Tynamo	\triangle

Cave (dust cloud)	
Pokémon	
Drilbur	0



Team Plasma Grunt Team Plasma Grunt





Step 1

Have Clay clear the way

As you approach the Chargestone Cave, a Galvantula web is blocking the entrance. Clay comes right along and removes it for you. He'll give you TM78 Bulldoze, which he should have given you after your Gym battle, then heads off on his way

Pokémon Training



No way in before the Gym battle

Even if you visit Chargestone Cave before you get the Quake Badge from the Driftveil Gym, you can't go in the cave. This is because Clay, who can break the web blocking the entrance, will not come along to save the day. If you don't have it yet, get that Gym Badge and come back.

Step 2

Meet N and the Shadow Triad

Three dark figures will surround you when you enter the cave, then take you to N. They are members of the Shadow Triad—members of Team Plasma picked by Ghetsis himself. N tells you that Team Plasma is waiting ahead to test you.



Step 3

Reunite with Bianca and Professor Juniper

Continue into the cave, and Bianca and Professor Juniper will approach you. The professor is here to research Klink, while Bianca is acting as her bodyguard. Bianca tells you that you can move the floating stones by pushing them. Professor Juniper will hand you the Lucky Egg.



Give a Pokémon the Lucky Egg to hold

Here in this dark cave, Professor Juniper is kind enough to give you the Lucky Egg. When a Pokémon holds this item, it receives more Experience Points after battle, so have the first Pokémon in your party hold it (p. 37).



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

© CHARGESTONE CAVE

Continue into the cave while pushing stones

Clear the way forward by moving the stones blocking the path, just like Bianca showed you. The stones are electrically charged, so they will stick to boulders. If you try and push a stone in a direction with no boulders, it can't move. When you want to move a stone, push it while facing in the direction of a nearby boulder.

Pokémon Training



Go to a different floor if you make a mistake

If you push a stone in the wrong direction, you can head to another floor and it will return to where it was before. You can start over as many times as you need to, so don't worry too much when moving the stones.

Step 5

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

CHARGESTONE CAVE (6)

Have the Doctor heal vour Pokémon

Doctor Wayne is on the path in B1F. After you defeat the Doctor in a Pokémon battle, he will heal all of your Pokémon. Talk to him again after defeating him, and he will heal your Pokémon whenever you need it. It's good to have a Doctor in the house!



A cave that affects Pokémon evolution

Chargestone Cave is connected to the evolution of Pokémon that come from other regions. The environment here has a special effect on the evolution of two particular species of Pokémon (p. 252).

Step 6

N waits near the exit

When you take a different set of stairs up to 1F after looking around the lower floors, you are almost to the exit to Mistralton City. But N is waiting for you, saying he wants to see what kind of dream you have. N will then challenge you to a battle.



Meet the Nugget brothers

Just to the west of where you enter B1F are the Nugget brothers. There is an older and younger brother, and they each give you a Nugget. These are valuable items!



types, but many share a common weakness. Boldore, Klink, and Ferroseed are all weak to Fighting-type moves. You can also attack Joltik, Klink, and Ferroseed's weaknesses to Fire-type moves.





Step 7

Continue north to Mistralton City

After you defeat N in battle, Bianca and Professor Juniper show up. N expresses his hostility toward Professor Juniper for being a Pokémon researcher, then leaves. After seeing off Bianca and the professor, you continue north to the exit into Mistralton City.



Find items with the Dowsing MCHN

Chargestone Cave has many hidden items. Use the Dowsing MCHN to find them.



egetables are grown by the runway and transported by cargo plane

Mistralton City

Pokémon Training



Most of Mistralton City is taken up by a giant runway for cargo planes. The area around the runway is surrounded by greenhouses (or fields). The vegetables harvested here are carried to other regions by cargo planes. It's time for you to earn your sixth Gym Badge.



4	Items
	First visit
	☐ Sharp Beak
	□ TM58 Sky Drop
	After investigating the
	Celestial Tower
	Fresh Water
	After defeating the Gym
	Leader
	☐ Jet Badge
	TM40 Aerial Ace
	☐ TM62 Acrobatics

Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)	
TM07 Hail	50,000
TM11 Sunny Day	50,000
TM18 Rain Dance	50,000
TM37 Sandstorm	50,000
	TM07 Hail TM11 Sunny Day TM18 Rain Dance

Seek the help of the Move Deleter

The Move Deleter in the Move Family's House can make your Pokémon forget a learned move. He can even make them forget a move that can't normally be forgotten, like an HM. When you want a Pokémon to forget a learned move, talk to the Move Deleter.



Sometimes the weather is rainy

Mistralton City's weather changes depending on the date and season. Rain can fall during the spring, summer, and autumn, and snow or hail will sometimes fall during the winter. When you visit the city, check the changes in weather (p. 206).



Have the reminder girl make your Pokémon remember moves

The reminder girl in the Move Family's House will make your Pokémon remember a forgotten move in exchange for one Heart Scale. The reminder girl can even make a Pokémon remember a move it knew at Level 1.

Pokémon Training



Learn the type of Hidden Power

Talk to the man inside the Pokémon Center to have him tell you what type Hidden Power will be when you teach it to a Pokémon. It's good info to have before you teach this move to a Pokémon.

Step 3

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

MISTRALTON CITY (6)

Meet Professor Juniper's father

A man approaches you as you continue north on the road directly west of the Pokémon Center. The man calls himself Juniper. It's Professor Juniper's dad! Cedric Juniper upgrades your Pokédex to commemorate your first meeting.



Check out your new Pokédex!

When your Pokédex is upgraded, you can check the different forms of a Pokémon or see your Shiny Pokémon. Also, new search features have been added. Open the Pokédex and have a look around (p. 39).



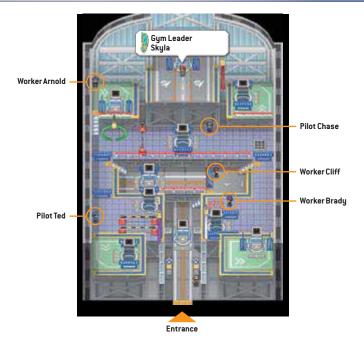
The Celestial Tower waits on Route 7

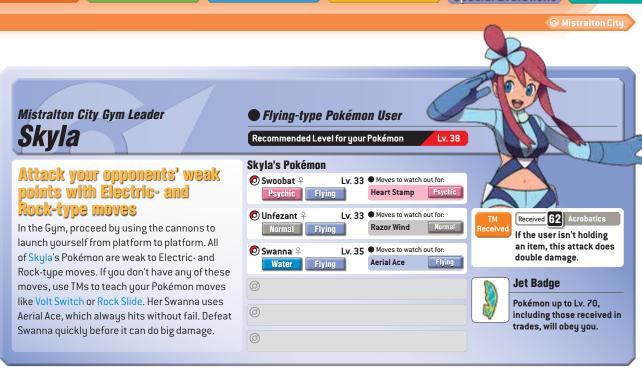
The Gym Leader, Skyla, is walking behind Cedric Juniper. Skyla says she is going to check on a weakened Pokémon at the top of the Celestial Tower and leaves. In order to reach the Celestial Tower, you'll need to head for Route 7 (p. 132).



Gym battle 6

Mistralton City Gym Battle





Challenge the Mistralton Celestial Tower City Gym

Pokémon Training

After you've returned from the Celestial Tower on Route 7, stop by the Pokémon Center first to heal your Pokémon and stock up on items. After you're fully prepared, follow the runway north to the Mistralton City Gym.



Exchange **Sweet Hearts for Heart Scales**

If you give the girl in Cargo Service ten Sweet Hearts, she will give you one Heart Scale. Get lots of Sweet Hearts by doing Feeling Checks on the C-Gear with your friends.

After beating City Gym

N tells you about the Legendary **Dragon-type Pokémon**

After you emerge victorious from your battle with Skyla, N is waiting for you. Before he leaves, N announces that he is going to resurrect and befriend the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon, then the world will recognize him as the hero.



After beating Find the kid's buried treasure the Mistralton by the runway

After defeating the Gym Leader, visit the house to the north of the Pokémon Center. After talking to the kid inside, you can find TM40 Aerial Ace near the south end of the runway. When you find it, the kid comes to meet you and gives you Aerial Ace as a gift.



Find items with the **Dowsing MCHN**

Many items are hidden near the greenhouses (or fields) to the south and west of the runway. Use the Dowsing MCHN to find these hidden items.

After beating Pass through Route 7 to reach the Mistralton City Gym **T**wist Mountain

The location of the seventh Gym is Icirrus City, past Route 7 and Twist Mountain. Head north to Route 7 and continue to the east side, where there are Harlequins standing on the raised walkways. If you continue north from there, you will reach the entrance to Twist Mountain (p. 136).



UNDVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

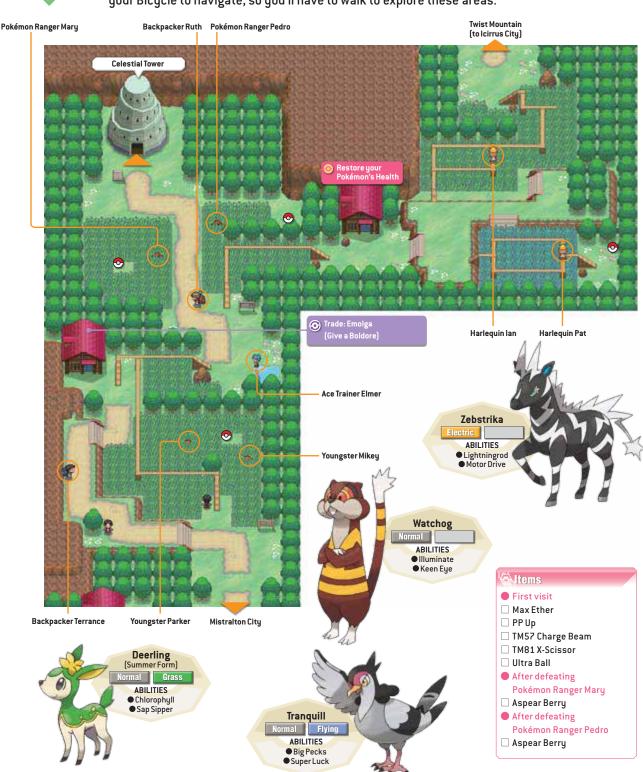
ROUTE 7

Route 7



Route 7 is thick with patches of tall grass. Pokémon Trainers are hidden in the tall grass so you can only see their heads. There are raised walkways everywhere, so if you like, you can use them to proceed without walking through the tall grass. The grass here is too thick for your Bicycle to navigate, so you'll have to walk to explore these areas.

Field Moves Needed



Spring Summer Autumn

Tall Grass	······································
Pokémon	
Deerling	0
Foongus	\triangle
Tranquill	0
Watchog	0
Zebstrika	0

O: Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Deerling	0
Foongus	\triangle
Tranquill	0
Watchog	0
Zebstrika	0

:Tall Grass	······································
Pokémon	
Cubchoo	0
Deerling	0
Foongus	Δ
Watchog	0
Zebstrika	0

Unik urass	
Pokémon	
Cubchoo	0
Deerling	0
Foongus	Δ
Watchog	0
Zebstrika	

Tall Grass (rustling)	-:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	\triangle
Unfezant	\triangle

Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	\triangle

Step

A new way to battle Trainers

A little north of Mistralton City, Ace Trainer Elmer challenges you to a Rotation Battle in Pokémon Black Version or a Triple Battle in Pokémon White Version. Before taking this challenge, check to make sure the three Pokémon that will appear in battle are ready to go.



Sometimes the weather is Rain

Route 7's weather changes depending on the day. It can rain in spring, summer, and autumn. When the weather is Rain, the power of Water-type moves goes up, and the power of Fire-type moves goes down. Consider this when choosing moves to use when battling.



Heal your Pokémon at the house

Continue north from Mistralton City, and you'll find a house where the route turns east. If you talk to the woman inside the house, she'll restore your Pokémon's health. Stop by and get your Pokémon healed when they're low on HP from battles with Trainers or wild Pokémon.



Stop on the raised walkway, and you'll come tumbling down

If you miss a step on the raised walkways, you will fall down to the tall grass below. Even if you stop, you can eventually fall, so cross slowly and carefully.

Step

Twist Mountain is to the east

Head east from the house where you can heal your Pokémon, then continue north to reach the entrance to Twist Mountain. But right now, your destination is the Celestial Tower, where Skyla went. Visit Twist Mountain after defeating Skyla at the Mistralton City Gym (p. 136).



Check in with Mom

When you proceed east on Route 7, your mom calls on the Xtransceiver. It's been a while since you've talked to your mom. Go home to Nuvema Town every now and again to see her so she won't worry too much.



Go north to reach the Celestial Tower

To reach the Celestial Tower, go straight north from Mistralton City. Skyla went there to rescue a weakened Pokémon. After battling Pokémon Trainers and collecting items, heal your Pokémon at the house, and continue north to reach the tower.



Get Berries by defeating Trainers

Defeat the Pokémon Rangers Mary and Pedro to get Aspear Berries. Mary and Pedro are in the tall grass next to the Celestial Tower.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

[™] Route

After you've hear about the storm in Opelucid City

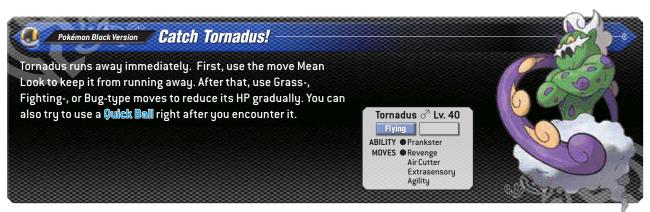
Meet the Pokémon that roams Unova

During the storm, when you pass by the front of the house where you can heal your Pokémon, an old woman lets you inside. When you go back outside after hearing her story, Tornadus (Thundurus) appears and then goes flying away. After this, Tornadus (Thundurus) moves around the Unova region.



Check the electric bulletin board

A massive storm is proof that Tornadus (Thundurus) is nearby. By checking the electric bulletin boards at every gate, you can see the location of the massive storm. Run to that area to catch Tornadus (Thundurus).





After you've heard about the storm in Opelucid City

Fly back to Opelucid City

Your next destination is the true test that stands between you and the Pokémon League—Victory Road. Victory Road is north of Opelucid City past Route 10. Use Fly to return to Opelucid City (p. 163, 167)





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NUVEMATOWN

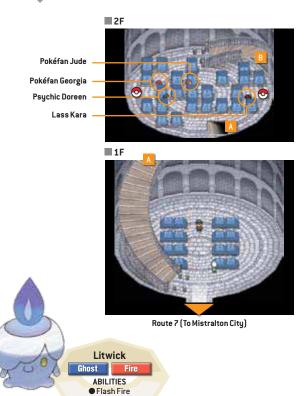
Celestial Tower

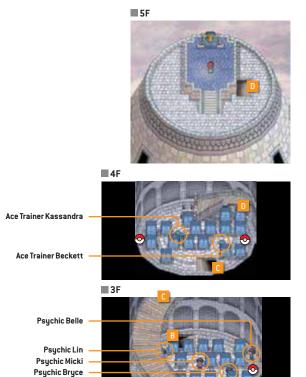
Pokémon Training

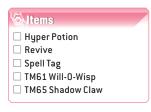


The Celestial Tower is a five-story tower built as a memorial to lost Pokémon. A bell whose tones are said to comfort spirits is placed on the top of the tower at the fifth floor.

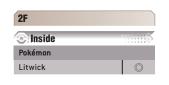








Flame Body



3F/4F	
⊙ :Inside	******
Pokémon	
Elgyem	
Litwick	

Nurse Sachiko

5F	
©:Roof	********
Pokémon	
Elgyem	0
Litwick	0

Climb the tower while battling Trainers

There are no Pokémon Trainers on the first floor, and wild Pokémon do not appear. Pokémon Trainers wait for you between the tombstones on the second floor and up. Pass through the gaps while battling Pokémon Trainers, and keep climbing towards the top.



Meet Ghost- and Psychic-type Pokémon

The Ghost-type Pokémon Litwick appears on the second through fifth floors of the Celestial Tower. This Pokémon can only be found here. The only place you can find Elgyem is on floors three through five in this tower. Catch them both if you can!



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



2

Have the Nurse heal your Pokémon on 3F

Nurse Sachiko stands right before the stairs to the fourth floor. After you defeat her in a Pokémon battle, she will heal all of your Pokémon. If you talk to her again after defeating her, she will always heal your Pokémon. If your Pokémon are hurt, talk to her and have her heal them.

Pokémon Training



Step 3

Skyla is waiting on the top floor

Skyla is already on the top floor when you get there and has already helped the weakened Pokémon. She invites you to ring the bell, so walk up to the bell and choose "Yes." After listening to the sound of the bell, Skyla says you are a kind and strong person.



Ringing the bell soothes spirits

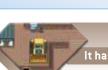
The bell on the fifth floor is said to soothe the spirits of Pokémon. The sound of the bell is a tone so pure it feels as if it cleanses the spirit. After you ring the bell, take a moment to listen.



Return to Mistralton City to challenge the Gym

After you ring the bell, Skyla will return to Mistralton City. Now it's time to return to Mistralton City to challenge the Gym (p. 131). Use Fly from the top of the Celestial Tower so you can get back to the city in an instant.





It has a reputation as a mine littered with valuable ore

Twist Mountain



Twist Mountain is a mine with caves designed to make it easy to extract minerals from the mountain. It is split up into an upper, middle, lower, and lowest level, and you can move down into the dip in the center with each level.





Summer	
© Cave	******
Pokémon	
Boldore	0
Cryogonal	A
Cubchoo	Δ
Gurdurr	0
Woobat	0



() Items	
Any season	When the season is spring,
☐ Ether	summer, or autumn
☐ Full Heal	☐ Ultra Ball
☐ HM03 Surf	When the season is winter
■ Max Potion	☐ Metal Coat
■ Moon Stone	☐ TM90 Substitute
■ Nugget	
☐ PP Up	
□ Revive	
☐ TM91 Flash Cannon	



Pokémon Training

Lower Level 1



■ Upper Level 1



Worker Heath

■ Upper Level 3

Hiker Terrell

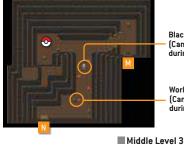
Entrance

Route 7 (to Mistralton City)

Doctor Hank Ace Trainer Caroll Worker Brand Restore your Pokémon's Health

Middle Level 1 Worker Rob

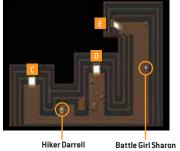
Middle Level 4



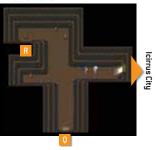
Black Belt Teppei (Can't be battled during winter)

Worker Rich (Can't be battled during winter)

Upper Level 2

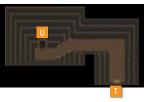








Upper Level 4 (Only accessible in winter)



Cubchoo ABII ITY Snow Cloak



Lowest Level 2 (Only accessible in winter)



Cheren challenges you to battle

Continue north from Route 7, and when you reach the entrance, Cheren arrives. Cheren also beat the Mistralton City Gym and received the Jet Badge. Saying he wants to see which of you is stronger, he challenges you to battle.

Pokémon Training



No entrance before the Gym battle

If you visit before beating the Mistralton City Gym, a Worker blocks the entrance to the mountain and won't let you inside. Also, you can't meet Cheren or Alder. Visit after beating the Mistralton City Gym.



Step 2

Get the HM Surf from Alder

When you defeat Cheren, Alder comes out of Twist Mountain. Alder teaches you that what you do with the power you obtained by becoming stronger is important, and he gives you HM03 Surf. Surf is a move that lets you travel over the water's surface.



Visit places Surf makes accessible

After you get Surf from Alder and before entering Twist Mountain, return to the places you skipped before where you now can use Surf. You can access Routes 17 and 18 (p. 140). If you use Surf on Route 6, you can go to Mistralton Cave (p. 143).

Step 3

3 Meet Clay

When you enter Twist Mountain, you run into Clay checking up on the mountain. Clay is concerned because he hasn't seen Team Plasma lately, and he can't figure out the location of their base. He says that kids should just enjoy their travels, and he leaves.



Sometimes the weather is rainy

Twist Mountain's weather changes depending on the date and season. The weather doesn't influence the inside of the cave, but it does influence the entrance and outside. Rainy weather makes Water-type moves stronger and Fire-type moves weaker.



Proceed while battling Trainers

Pokémon Trainers are waiting inside the caves and along the walls of Twist Mountain. Some of these Trainers are even hiding under clumps of dirt in the path. Battle the Trainers to raise your Pokémon's level while continuing deeper into the cave.

Pokémon Training



Does the ice-covered rock hold a secret?

On Lowest Level 1, you'll find an ice-covered rock. This rock is related to the evolution of a Pokémon from a different region (p. 252).



Doctor Hank heals your Pokémon

You can find Doctor Hank by the wall on the west side of Twist Mountain's outdoor area. After you defeat him in a Pokémon battle, he will heal all of your Pokémon. If you talk to him again after defeating him, he will always heal your Pokémon. If your Pokémon are hurt, have him heal them.



Come back to visit the Worker

There's a Worker by the corner in Lower Level 1. Talk to him after finishing the main story, and you can get one Pokémon Fossil per day (p. 194).

Step



Cheren argues with Team Plasma

When you reach Lower Level 2, Cheren is arguing with a member of Team Plasma. Another Team Plasma Grunt shows up, and as they leave he says "that item" has been found and they should go to the tower. What could "that item" be?



Step



Exit leads to Icirrus City

When you leave using the exit east of where Cheren and Team Plasma were arguing, you are in Icirrus City, where the seventh Gym is located. Explore the rest of Twist Mountain while battling Pokémon Trainers and collecting items. Then continue east to Icirrus City (p. 146)



Visit again when it snows

During winter, Twist Mountain is covered in snow, and you can reach places you couldn't during spring, summer, or autumn. Visit again during winter to collect items and battle Pokémon Trainers.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

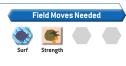
ROUTE 17 • ROUTE 18 • P2 LABORATORY

List of Trainers

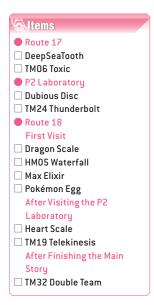
Route 17 • Route 18 • P2 Laboratory

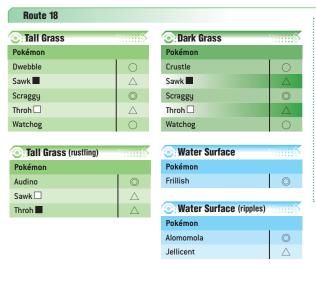


To reach Route 17, you must travel over water from Route 1. To the west is the beach island containing Route 18, and to the north stands the small research lab, P2 Laboratory. The ocean current is very fast, so you must proceed carefully.











ltem the man in the prefab house will buy

Item Pri	Dara Dana	10.00	
	Item	Price	

Pokémon Training



P2 Laboratory

Tall Grass

Pokémon

Herdier

Klink

Scraggy

Watchog

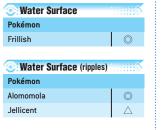
Tall Grass (rustling)

Pokémon

Audino

Stoutland

Route 17/P2 Laboratory





After finishing the main story

Fishing



Step 1

Ride the rapids

Use Surf on Route 1 and continue west over the water, and once you get past the gate, you are on Route 17. The water surrounding the area flows rapidly in one direction, and two rapid flows on the west side of the shallows will carry you further west. If you ride the bottom rapid flow, you can continue to Route 18.



Find items with the Dowsing MCHN

Many items are hidden in Route 17, Route 18, and the P2 Laboratory. Use the Dowsing MCHN to find hidden items.



The girl in the prefab house heals your Pokémon

Head north on Route 18 and you will find a prefab house. If you talk to the girl inside the house, she will restore your Pokémon's health. Stop by the prefab house and get your Pokémon healed when they're hurt by battles with Trainers or wild Pokémon.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NOUTE 17 • ROUTE 18 • P2 LABORATORY

Pokémon Training

Step

3

Get a Pokémon Egg from the treasure hunter

Talk to the treasure hunter in the prefab house and he will give you the Pokémon Egg. If you have space in your party, you can receive the Egg. Walk around with the Egg in your party, and in time it will hatch.



Larvesta hatches from the Egg

A treasure hunter gives you a Larvesta Egg. Larvesta does not appear in the wild. Make sure to get the Egg, and register Larvesta in the Pokédex.

Step



Sell your Rare Bone

The sunglasses-wearing man in the corner of the prefab house will pay a lot for the item Rare Bone. Very rarely, a wild Crustle in the dark grass will be holding a Rare Bone. If you get one, sell it here.



Step 5

Get HM05 Waterfall

Continue west to the prefab house on Route 18, go down the stairs, and when you reach the plateau on the west side you can find an item that has fallen on the outcropping to the south. It's HM05 Waterfall. Teach this HM to a Pokémon, and you can climb up and down waterfalls. Make sure to get it.



Collect items in the Lostlorn Forest

Visit the waterfall to the north of the Lostlorn Forest on Route 16 and use Waterfall to climb it. At the top, you can collect an item. Go to the Lostlorn Forest once you have Waterfall (p. 110).



Get items at the P2 Laboratory

Ride the rapids on the north side of Route 18 to the east to reach the P2 Laboratory. The P2 Laboratory is an island with a small research lab, but you will find a Pokémon Trainer and some items there, as well as tall grass where wild Pokémon appear. Make sure to have a look at everything.





Go to Route 18 from the P2 Laboratory

Use Surf from the P2 Laboratory. Be careful not to ride the rapids, and pass through the gaps between them. Continue west to reach the beach in the center of Route 18. You can't reach this place from Route 17.







Visit Mistralton Cave

Once you've looked around Route 17, Route 18, and the P2 Laboratory, use Fly to go to Driftveil City. Go west to Route 6 and use Surf from the tall grass in the north to cross the river and go east. Then, you can reach Mistralton Cave.



A forgotten cave sealed with hints of a legend's presence

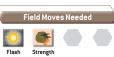
UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



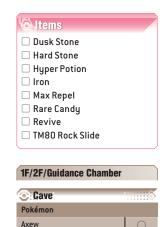
Pokémon Training



Mistralton Cave is a cave deep within Route 6. Somewhere in its depths, the Legendary Pokémon Cobalion lives in hiding. It is said that Cobalion saved the Pokémon of the Unova region from a sea of fire in the distant past.















Pokémon Training

■ Guidance Chamber





Head to Mistralton Cave from Route 6

The entrance to Mistralton Cave is in the eastern part of Route 6. Go west from Driftveil City and head toward Chargestone Cave on Route 6 until you reach the house. Go east from that house and then use Surf. Keep going east to the cave.



Find items with the **Dowsing MCHN**

Many items are hidden in Mistralton Cave. Use the Dowsing MCHN to find hidden items.



Use Flash to brighten up the area

The inside of the cave is pitch-black. Only the area around you is lit up, so you can't see what's going on inside. Teach TM70 Flash to a Pokémon and use the move in the cave. The lit area expands, and it is easier to explore the cave.



Get Flash

Get TM70 Flash from the sunglasses-wearing man who pops out from behind the garbage bin in Castelia City's Narrow Street. If you don't have it yet, visit Castelia City (p. 95).



Proceed while collecting items

Inside the caves, rocks sometimes block the path. You can move them aside with Strength. Push the rocks into the holes, and continue deep into the caves. Many items have been dropped in the cave. Check every corner to collect all of the items.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

MISTRALTON CAVE

Listen to the old man in the **Guidance Chamber**

On the eastern side of the Guidance Chamber, an old man offers to tell you an old story when you approach him. If you say "YES," he will tell you how Cobalion, Terrakion, and Virizion saved the Pokémon from a sea of fire.

Pokémon Training



Cobalion and the others have lost faith in humanity

Cobalion, Terrakion, and Virizion rescued Pokémon from a fire started by a war between humans. After that, they refused to associate with humans, and they hid themselves far from people.

Step <

Discover the Legendary Pokémon Cobalion

In the Guidance Chamber, go west from the old storyteller. Use Strength to push the rock into the hole, and keep going west until you reach Cobalion. When you talk to it, the battle begins. Capture it in order to complete your Pokédex.



Capture Cobalion!

Cobalion's Ability, Justified, makes Cobalion's attack rise one level when it is hit by a Dark-type attack. When its Attack goes up, the move Sacred Sword becomes very powerful, so be careful. Lower its HP with Normal-, Grass-, and Ice-type moves.



Step <

Now you can capture the other two

When you meet Cobalion, the seals in Pinwheel Forest and Victory Road are removed and you can capture Virizion and Terrakion. First, hurry over to Pinwheel Forest and capture Virizion (p. 90).





Virizion



Leave the cave and return to **Twist Mountain**

Once you've captured Cobalion, return to your guest to collect the Gym Badges. When you leave the cave, use Fly to return to Mistralton City. Head to Route 7 to the east, then north on Route 7, and enter Twist Mountain (p. 138).





Terrakion

Icirrus City

Pokémon Training

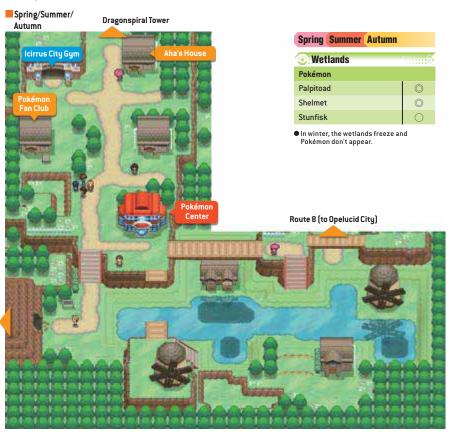


UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

ICIRRUS CITY (*)

[wist Mountain (to Mistralton City]

Icirrus City is a city with wetlands where Pokémon appear. It has the Pokémon Fan Club and Aha's House, where you can win prizes at a quiz. Come here to earn your seventh Gym Badge.



Shelmet ABILITIES Hydration Shell Armor

First Visit ☐ Fresh Water

☐ TM31 Brick Break

Items the old gentleman in the Pokémon Center will buy

Items	Price
Blue Shard	200
Bug Gem	200
Dark Gem	200
Dragon Gem	200
Electric Gem	200
Fighting Gem	200
Fire Gem	200
Flying Gem	200
Ghost Gem	200
Grass Gem	200
Green Shard	200
Ground Gem	200
Ice Gem	200
Normal Gem	200
Poison Gem	200
Psychic Gem	200

Items	Price
Red Shard	200
Rock Gem	200
Steel Gem	200
Water Gem	200
Yellow Shard	200
Hard Stone	500
Damp Rock	1,000
Everstone	1,000
Float Stone	1,000
Heat Rock	1,000
lcy Rock	1,000
Smooth Rock	1,000
Pearl	1,400
Oval Stone	1,500
Stardust	2,000
Dawn Stone	3,000

Items	Price
Dusk Stone	3,000
Fire Stone	3,000
Moon Stone	3,000
Shiny Stone	3,000
Sun Stone	3,000
Thunderstone	3,000
Water Stone	3,000
Shoal Shell	7,000
Big Pearl	7,500
Star Piece	9,800
Nugget	10,000
Pearl String	25,000
Big Nugget	30,000
Comet Shard	60,000

 After you show the 	
Pokémon Fan Club Chairman	
a Pokémon you raised 25 to	
49 levels	
☐ Exp. Share	
After you show the	
Pokémon Fan Club Chairman	
a Pokémon you raised	
50 to 98 levels	
☐ Cleanse Tag	
After you show the	
Pokémon Fan Club Chairman	
a Pokémon you raised	
99 levels	
☐ King's Rock	
 After beating the 	
Icirrus City Gym	
☐ Freeze Badge	
☐ TM79 Frost Breath	
During winter	
□ RageCandyBar	
☐ Rare Candy	
	_
Poké Mart	



Pokémon Training



Route 8 (to Opelucid City)

Step

[wist Mountain (to Mistralton City]

Listen to Cedric Juniper's story about Dragonspiral Tower

Cedric Juniper comes to talk to you when you enter lcirrus City from Twist Mountain. According to him, Dragonspiral Tower just outside of Icirrus City is the place where the Legendary Pokémon came to life and now sleeps.



Changes in the weather

Icirrus City's weather changes depending on the date and season. Rain can fall during spring, summer, and autumn, and snow or blizzards will sometimes fall during winter. When you visit the city, observe the changes in weather (p. 206).



Pokémon appear in the wetlands

Wetlands sprawl east of Twist Mountain's exit. Walking through the swamp water can make wild Pokémon appear. But in winter, the swamp is frozen and you can't catch any Pokémon here. Catch them in spring, summer, or autumn.









Sell many different stones

The old gentleman in the Pokémon Center buys many stones from you. He buys gems and shards from you, in addition to stones and items with similar names, such as the Fire Stone or Water Stone. Refer to the list when you are selling an item (p. 146).

Pokémon Training



Listen carefully to the background music

Four people are dancing in a circle to the west of the Pokémon Center. When you approach them, clapping is added to the background music. Listen carefully to the music when you approach the dancing people.









Rhythmic clapping and dancing

Step <

Learn how friendly your Pokémon is

Talk to the girl in the Pokémon Fan Club, and she will offer to see how well you are getting along with your Pokémon. If you answer "YES" and choose one of your party Pokémon, the girl will tell you how friendly that Pokémon is toward



Get three items from the Pokémon Fan Club Chairman

Talk to the chairman of the Pokémon Fan Club and show him a well-raised Pokémon to get an item. Show him a Pokémon you raised 25 to 49 levels to get an Exp. Share, 50 to 98 levels to get a Cleanse Tag, and 99 levels to get a King's Rock.



Get one more item in winter

You can't reach the item bu the south side of the Pokémon Fan Club during spring, summer, or autumn. However, in winter, snowdrifts make it possible to cross the ledge and get the item.

Step 6 Win prizes for answering the quiz

Take the Pep Quiz at Aha's House. You can challenge it once per day. Aha asks the questions. Use the hints Wye gives to answer the questions. A correct answer gets you an Antidote, and an incorrect one gets you a Parlyz Heal.



Meet a former member of Team Rocket

During winter, snow piles up, and you can reach the house to the south of the wetlands. A former member of Team Rocket lives in the house with his family. Talk to his wife to get a RageCandyBar.



Take on the Pokémon Gym

The Icirrus City Gym is to the north of the Pokémon Fan Club. Heal your Pokémon at the Pokémon Center, and buy any items you may need at the Poké Mart. Then, head for the Gym to get your seventh Badge.



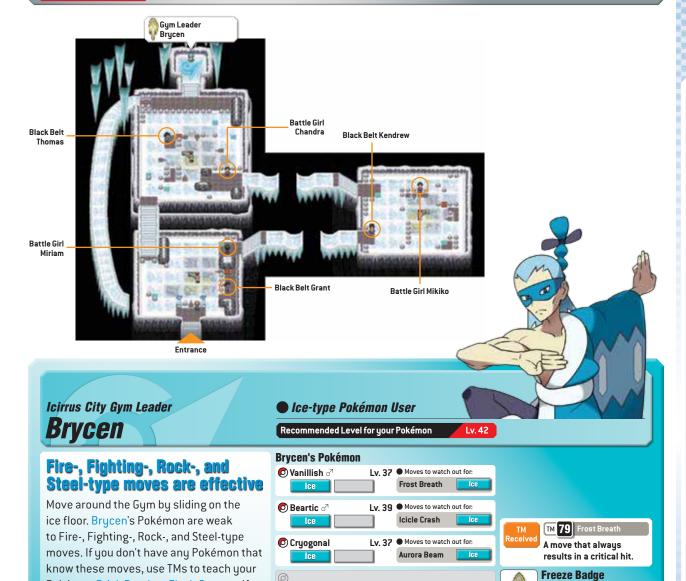
Hear stories about the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon

Talk to the woman on the northern side of the Pokémon Center to hear about the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon. If you are playing Pokémon Black Version, the story will be about Reshiram. If you are playing Pokémon White Version, it will be about Zekrom.

Gym battle 7

Pokémon Training

Icirrus City Gym Battle



After beating the Icirrus City Gym

Depart for Dragonspiral Tower

With your Gym battle over, you leave the Gym. Cheren and Bianca are waiting. The Shadow Triad appear and tell you Ghetsis wants you to come to Dragonspiral Tower. Then they disappear. Go north from the Gym, and head for Dragonspiral Tower (p. 151).

Pokémon Brick Break or Flash Cannon. If

you use Grass-, Ground-, Flying-, or Dragon-

type Pokémon, which are weak to Ice-type

moves, you will take massive damage.



Pokémon up to Lv. 80,

including those received

in trades, will obey you.



One of the great things about Pokémon trading is that it can be done with family, friends, and other players all over the world. You'll even

encounter people during your journey who will want to trade Pokémon with you!



Trade for hard-to-get Pokémon

Pokémon Training

Pokémon Black Version

Trade 1 The girl in the house in Nacrene City

The Petilil you get by trading a Cottonee is a Pokémon that doesn't appear in the wild in Pokémon Black Version. You can easily catch a Cottonee in Pinwheel Forest, so this is a

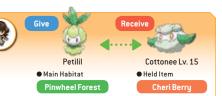


Pinwheel Forest

Pokémon White Version

Trade 1 The girl in the house in Nacrene City

The Cottonee you get by trading a Petilil is a Pokémon that doesn't appear in the wild in Pokémon White Version. You can easily catch a Petilil in Pinwheel Forest, so this is a



Trade 2 The boy in the house in Driftveil City

The Basculin you get by trading a Minccino is the Red-Striped Form in *Pokémon Black* Version and the Blue-Striped Form in Pokémon White Version. You can catch a Minccino to trade on Route 16.



Trade 3 The Hiker in the house on Route 7

The Emolga you get by trading a Boldore can be tough to find in the wild, because it only appears in the rustling grass. You can catch a Boldore in Twist Mountain, so be sure to



Trade 4 The woman in the trailer on Route 15

The Rotom you get by trading a Ditto is a hard-to-get Pokémon that doesn't appear in the Unova region. Catch a Ditto in the Giant Chasm to make this trade.



Trade 5 The man in the villa in Undella Town

This trader visits Undella Town during the summer. To get the Cinccino he wants, you can use a Shiny Stone to evolve a Minccino. Trade it to the man for a Munchlax, which is hard to find in the Unova region!

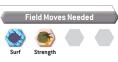


UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Dragonspiral Tower



Dragonspiral Tower is said to be the oldest structure built in the Unova region. Stories say the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon is waiting on the top floor for the person who pursues truth or ideals.







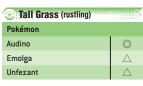
Pokémon Training







Ulass	
Pokémon	
Deerling	0
Druddigon	
Mienfoo	0
Tranquill	0
	•





• Iall Grass	
Pokémon	
Deerling	0
Druddigon	\triangle
Mienfoo	0
Tranquill	0
Tall Grass (rustling)	

·········
Δ
0
0
0

Audino

Emolga





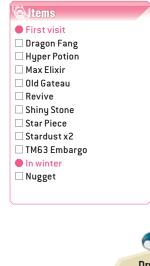
 \triangle

Emolga

Entrance (Winter)

Vanillish

,	
○:Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Cubchoo	
Deerling	0
Mienfoo	0
Vanillite	0
- T-11 0 (18)	
Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	
Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Beartic	
Mienfoo	0
Sawehuck	



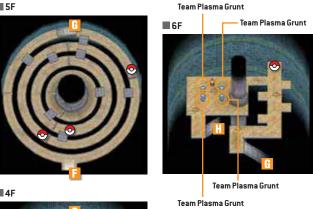






Dragonair Dragonite

Dratini



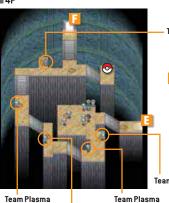
Pokémon Training





Team Plasma Grunt





Team Plasma



eam Plasma Grunt



Step

Cedric Juniper is waiting by the tower entrance

Cedric Juniper is waiting at the entrance to Dragonspiral Tower. Bianca introduces herself to Cedric, and he tells you he saw Cheren and Brycen chase after a large group of Team Plasma members that broke through the tower wall and went inside.



Changes in the weather

The weather changes in the area outside the first floor of the Dragonspiral Tower depending on the date and season. When the weather is rainy, the power of Water-type moves goes up, and the power of Fire-type moves goes down.



Climb the tower while collecting items

Enter Dragonspiral Tower and pass through the first floor. When you reach the second floor, Cheren is waiting by the exit. He chases Team Plasma further into the tower. Gather the items, and follow Cheren toward the third floor.



Climb the snow for an extra item

There is an item by a ledge to the west of the entrance. If the season is spring, summer, or autumn, you can't climb the ledge, so you can't get the item. In winter, the snow piles up and you can climb up to where the item is. Come back during winter to get the item.





Continue on the ramps

The third floor is covered with one-way launch ramps. You can jump over them in one direction, but you can't go back the other way. If you go the wrong direction, you'll end up heading back toward the entrance. Don't get frustrated just think about which direction you're going, and you can reach the stairs to the fourth floor.



Battle Trainers outside the tower

Outside the tower, you can use Surf to cross the water and battle the two Pokémon Trainers in the tall grass to the east. There is an item left in the tall grass for you to pick up.

Brycen and Cheren lend a hand

When you reach the fourth floor, Brycen and Cheren are battling a large group of Team Plasma members. Brycen tells you to go on ahead while they hold the rest of the Team Plasma Grunts there. Head for the next floor and battle the Team Plasma members that try to stop you on the way.





Aim for the top while battling Team Plasma

Battle with Team Plasma as you climb the tower. Use the stairs to the north to climb to the fifth floor of the tower. On the fifth floor, there are four circular paths around the tower. Cross the bridges connecting the paths and continue toward the stairs to the sixth floor while picking up items.



Step



Giallo makes a stand

When you reach the sixth floor, Giallo of the Seven Sages is standing there with four Team Plasma Grunts. Giallo sends them to stop you, and you'll have to defeat all four in a row before you can climb the stairs to the seventh floor.



You can't recover until you beat four Grunts

In this challenge, each Team Plasma Grunt will battle you one after another, without giving you a moment's rest. You won't have time to heal your Pokémon between battles. If your Pokémon's HP goes down, heal them during battle by using items.

Step



N gets Zekrom (Reshiram)

On the seventh floor, N is befriending the Legendary Pokémon Zekrom (Reshiram). The Legendary Pokémon recognizes N as a hero. N tells you to look for the other Legendary Pokémon and leaves riding Zekrom (Reshiram).



Step <



Go to the Desert Resort to look for a clue

When you return to the entrance, the Champion Alder arrives. Alder tells you the Relic Castle may hold a clue about the other Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon. Use Fly to return to Nimbasa City, then go through Route 4 to reach the Relic Castle (p. 104).



A worried Cheren finds his answer

Cheren had been worrying about the reason he was trying to get stronger. After you visit Dragonspiral Tower, Cheren finally finds his answer, and realizes that being able to help someone out when they're in trouble is true strength.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

DRAGONSPIRAL TOWER

List of Trainers

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

ROUTE 8 • MOOR OF ICIRRUS (8)

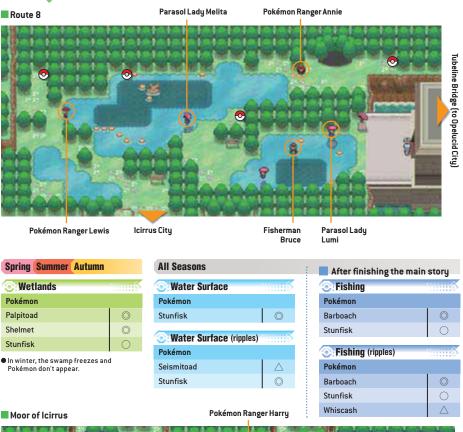
Route 8 • Moor of Icirrus

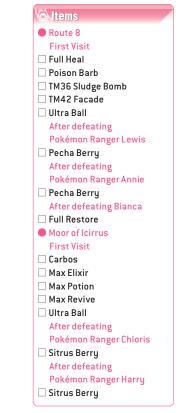
It rains a lot here, and the marshy swamp holds many Pokémon



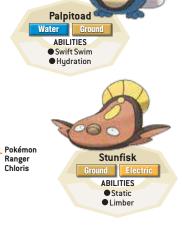
Route 8 is covered in marshes and water. Constant rain means the route is always mucky. To the north is the Moor of Icirrus, where a marsh has formed from water that has collected in uneven ground.











154

Proceed while battling Trainers

First, head north when you enter Route 8 from Icirrus City. Use Surf from where Pokémon Ranger Lewis is and head east. Battle the Pokémon Trainers along the way and head for the Moor of Icirrus.



Sometimes the weather is rainu

Route 8's weather changes depending on the date and season. Rain can fall during spring, summer, and autumn, and snow or hail will sometimes fall during winter. Pay attention to changes in weather (p. 206).

Step



Investigate the Moor of Icirrus

In the Moor of Icirrus north of Route 8, Pokémon pop out of the marshes and water covering the area. Have battles with Pokémon Trainers and wild Pokémon. Make sure to check every last corner and gather items.



Get Berries by defeating Rangers

Get Pecha Berries by defeating Pokémon Rangers Lewis and Annie in Pokémon battles. Get Sitrus Berries by defeating Pokémon Rangers Harry and Chloris in the Moor of Icirrus.



Use HMs to see everything

To see everything in the Moor of Icirrus, you need the HMs Surf and Strength. Use Surf to go around the east side, and then use Strength to push the rock on the west side into the hole and open up a path. Once you've seen everything, return to Route 8.



Step

Return to Route 8 and head to its end

When you return to Route 8 from the Moor of Icirrus, go south through the marsh. When you reach the Trainer Tips sign, turn east. Continue on to the Tubeline Bridge while battling Trainers.



Step <

Get items from the Parasol Lady

Get an item once a day from the Parasol Lady behind the sign. The item she gives you changes depending on the time of day (p. 49). She gives you a Damp Rock in the morning, a Heat Rock during the afternoon, a Smooth Rock in the evening, and an lcy Rock at night.





When you try to enter the Tubeline Bridge to go east, Bianca appears and starts talking to you. She says that there is a lot she wants to do, but first she needs to know more about Pokémon, and then she challenges you to a battle. Accept Bianca's challenge.



Defeat Bianca and get an item

Defeat Bianca in a Pokémon battle, and she will give you a Full Restore. It's a useful item that both restores HP and heals status conditions. After you get your eighth Gym Badge, you can buu them at the Poké Mart.



Musharna 9





Serperior 3



Musharna 9

Head to the Tubeline Bridge

When you defeat Bianca in battle, she gives a few words of encouragement as she leaves. Your next goal is Opelucid City, where you'll find the eighth Pokémon Gym and hints about the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon. First, head to the Tubeline Bridge.

Lv. 40

Pokémon Training



Team Plasma blocks your way

You can explore Route 8 even before you beat the Icirrus Citu Gym. However, Team Plasma is blocking the entrance to the Tubeline Bridge. Once you beat the Icirrus City Gym, head for the Tubeline Bridge. If you haven't been to Relic Castle (p. 102) yet, you'll need to visit before they'll let you through.



A sturdy steel bridge that won't budge an inch when trains cross it

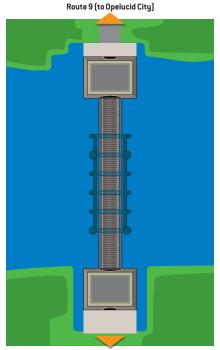
Tubeline Bridge



Tubeline Bridge is a strong bridge made of steel. Subway trains constantly pass through the lower part of the bridge. On Friday nights, a group of toughs appear out of nowhere and ride their bikes around the bridge.



Items ☐ TM43 Flame Charge



Route 8 (to Icirrus City)

Hear Ghetsis's story and head for Route 9

Ghetsis is waiting near the exit. He compliments you on obtaining the Light Stone (Dark Stone). Then he lectures you about his plans and leaves. Go north toward Route 9.

Pokémon Training



On Fridays, thugs take over the bridge

Every Friday evening and night, lots of Bikers and Roughnecks appear on the bridge (p. 49). If you beat the underling Morgann and the boss Jeremy, they'll change the name of their group to the name of your lead Pokémon.



This paved road attracts those who love bikes

Route 9



Route 9 is a paved road that cuts through a wooded area. On the north side is Shopping Mall Nine, which boasts the greatest variety of goods in Unova.









(C) Items	
☐ Full Restore	
☐ HP Up	
☐ PP Up	
☐ Thunderstone	
☐ TM56 Fling	

0
0
0
0

Tall Grass (rustling)	*******
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Cinccino	\triangle
Emolga	
Gothitelle 	
Reuniclus	\triangle

O: Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Duosion 🗆	0
Garbodor	0
Gothorita	
Liepard	Δ
Minccino	0
Pawniard	0
	•



TM56 Fling is flung at you

When you enter Route 9 from the Tubeline Bridge, an Infielder close to the gate throws TM56 Fling to you. The Dark-type move Fling is an attack that lets the user throw its held item at the target.

Pokémon Training



Scary-looking Trainers gather here

Several scary-looking guys riding around on motorcycles gather on Route 9. Sometimes, a Biker and a Roughneck will team up as a pair of Hooligans and challenge you to a Double Battle.

Step 2 Stop by Shopping Mall Nine

Go east on Route 9 and you will see Shopping Mall Nine on the north side. This convenient store is well-stocked with a variety of items. Some of these items aren't available at Poké Marts, so be sure to stop by (p. 159).



Shopping Mall Nine

Shopping Mall Nine is a famous mall. It's on Route Nine, so that's where it got its name.



You can't enter the Challenger's Cave yet

Challenger's Cave is to the west, past the tall grass that spreads out through the south side of the route. However, the Black Belt standing in front of the entrance will not let you in. You can enter this cave after finishing the main story (p. 195).



Battle Trainers inside the mall too

Inside the shopping mall, four Pokémon Trainers are waiting for you. You can battle them by talking to them, so defeat all of them to make your Pokémon stronger.



Head east to Opelucid City

On the other side of the gate to the east is Opelucid City, where the eighth Gym is located (see p. 160 if you are playing Pokémon Black Version, and p. 164 if you are playing Pokémon White Version). Pass through the gate to go after your final Gym Badge.



What's the secret of the room with the appliances?

On the first floor of the Shopping Mall is a warehouse with a pile of appliances in cardboard boxes. This place has a special meaning for a Pokémon from a different region (p. 249).



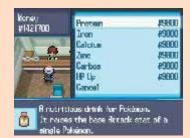
UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Buy a variety of items at Shopping Mall Nine

Shopping Mall Nine sells a variety of items on each of its three floors. Some items indispensable for raising Pokémon, such as Protein and Iron, can only be purchased here.

Pokémon Training





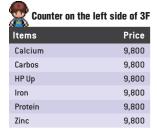


Counter on the right side of 2F

Price 90,000

90,000

@ @







Rich Boy Manuel

Waitress Flo

Items

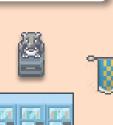
TM15 Hyper Beam

TM68 Giga Impact

Information

Counter on the left side of 2F	
Items	Price
Favored Mail	50
Greet Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50
Like Mail	50
Reply Mail	50
RSVP Mail	50
Thanks Mail	50
Poké Ball	200
Heal Ball	300
Great Ball	600
Dusk Ball	1,000
Nest Ball	1,000
Net Ball	1,000

Counter on the left side of 2F	
Items	Price
Favored Mail	50
Greet Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50
Like Mail	50
Reply Mail	50
RSVP Mail	50
Thanks Mail	50
Poké Ball	200
Heal Ball	300
Great Ball	600
Dusk Ball	1,000
Nest Ball	1,000
Net Ball	1,000
Quick Ball	1,000
Timer Ball	1,000
Ultra Ball	1,200



f 2F	
ice	
50	
50	
50	
50	
50	
50	
50	
200	
300	
000	
000	
000	
000	
000	
000	
200	

Counter on the le	ft side of 1F
Items	Price
Antidote	100
Parlyz Heal	200
Awakening	250
Burn Heal	250
Ice Heal	250
Potion	300
Repel	350
Super Repel	500

Items	Price
Escape Rope	550
Full Heal	600
Max Repel	700
Super Potion	700
Poké Toy	1,000
Hyper Potion	1,200
Revive	1,500
Max Potion	2,500



Opelucid City

Pokémon Black Version



Opelucid City is a modern city packed with buildings. You can enjoy Rotation Battles in the Battle House. You visit this city to obtain information related to the Legendary Pokémon and take on the Gym. Field Moves Needed



First visit

Destiny Knot

Float Stone

Fresh Water

Ring Target

After showing a Pokémon caught in Pokémon White Version that knows the move Charge

Cell Battery

After Beating the Gym Leader

Legend Badge

Master Ball

🗌 TM82 Dragon Tail

Timer Ball

BridgeMail T 50 50 Favored Mail 50 **Greet Mail** Inquiry Mail 50 Like Mail 50 50 Reply Mail **RSVP Mail** 50 Thanks Mail 50 **Dusk Ball** 1,000 Ouick Ball 1,000

1,000

Prons

☐ Big Bag

☐ Fluffy Beard

☐ Gift Box

☐ Scarlet Hat

Step 1

Ghetsis is giving a speech to the people of the city

Ghetsis is giving a speech in front of a Trainer Tips sign when you enter the city and go east. He says that N has joined forces with the Legendary Pokémon and is going to make a new country, and you'd better set your Pokémon free. His speech puts the people of the city into turmoil.





OPELUCID CITY (*POKÉMON BLACK VERSION*) 🕲

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Alder introduces you to Drayden and Iris

After Ghetsis leaves, two people upset by his speech remain. They are Drayden and Iris, who hold a clue to the Legendary Pokémon. Drayden and Iris invite you to Drayden's house to talk. Visit Drayden's house after looking around the city.



You met Iris in Castelia City

You've already met Iris, the girl with Drayden, in Castelia City. She helped you when Team Plasma stole one of Bianca's Pokémon, and she acted as Bianca's bodyguard.

Get Props from the old man

An old man who loves the Pokémon Musical lives in the house to the west of the Trainer Tips sign. Talk to him every day to get a Prop to use when you Dress Up your Pokémon. He will give you four different Props. Visit four days in a row to get all the Props.

Pokémon Training



Check how well you've raised your Pokémon

The girl in the first floor of a house will tell you how strong the first Pokémon in your party is. If she says, "It put in a great effort!" that's proof that your Pokémon has experienced many battles.



Have Rotation Battles at the Battle House

The Battle House is two doors east of the Opelucid City Gym. Here, you can enjoy Rotation Battles with two Pokémon Trainers once a day. Also, if you ask the man on the first floor, he will teach you the detailed rules.







Show a Pokémon caught in Pokémon White Version

A man on the second floor of the house on the north side of the Pokémon Center asks you to loan him a Pokémon that knows the move Charge. Trade with someone who has Pokémon White Version for a Pokémon such as Blitzle, Zebstrika, or Klink. The man will give you the Cell Battery as



Step <

You can't proceed to Route 11

The gate on the east side of the city is connected to Route 11. But you can't go to Route 11 until you complete the main story (p. 231). If you enter the gate and try to go east, a guard will block your way.



Visit everyone to get items

If you talk to the people on the second floor of Drayden's house, or the people on the first floor of the house directly to the west of the Battle House, they will give you items. Visit all of the homes, talk to people, and collect items.



Learn about the Legendary Pokémon from Drayden

Go to Drayden's house, and you will hear the story of the Legendary Pokémon. This Pokémon became involved in a battle between the two heroes that split its body into two parts: Reshiram and Zekrom. But even Drayden doesn't know how to awaken the Pokémon.

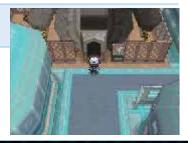


Pokémon Training

Step <

Take on the Opelucid City Gym

After telling you about the Legendary Pokémon, Drayden who, it turns out, is the Opelucid City Gym Leader—says he will accept your challenge. Go west from Drayden's house, and turn north at the Trainer Tips sign, and you will reach the Gym.

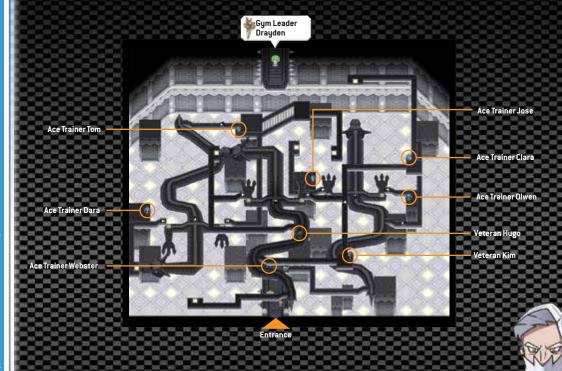


What's the price of Fresh Water?

Talk to Clyde at the entrance of the Opelucid City Gym after beating the Gym, and he will ask to be paid for all of the Fresh Water he has given you! (Luckily, he's joking.)

Gym battle 8

Opelucid City Gym Battle



Opelucid City Gym Dravden

Dragon-type Pokémon User

Recommended Level for your Pokémon

Lv. 46

Hit extra hard with Ice- or **Dragon-type moves**

In this Gym, you proceed by changing the route with switches. Drayden's Pokémon are all weak to Ice- and Dragon-type moves. If you don't have any of these moves, use a TM to teach your Pokémon Frost Breath or Blizzard. The move Dragon Dance raises Attack and Speed one level. If it is used several times, you could be in danger of taking big damage, so defeat the opposing Pokémon as quickly as you can.

Drayden's Pokémon

Lv. 41 • Moves to watch out for: Dragon Dance Dragon Dragon O Druddigon Lv. 41 • Moves to watch out for: Dragon Lv. 43 Moves to watch out for Haxorus ♂ Dragon **Dragon Tail**

Pokémon to be switched in.

TM 82 Dragon Tai In a battle with a Trainer, this move forces another

Legend Badge

All Pokémon, including those received in trades. will obey you.



OPELUCID CITY (POKÉMON BLACK VERSION)

the Opelucid City Gym

Professor Juniper meets you outside the Gym

Professor Juniper is waiting for you when you leave the Gym after defeating Drayden. She was planning to tell you how to reawaken Reshiram, but she hasn't figured out how to do it yet. The Professor guides you to the road that will take you to the Pokémon League.

Pokémon Training



After beating **Get the Master Ball from Professor Juniper** the Opelucid City Gym

Just before the gate to Route 10, Professor Juniper asks if you regret going on your journey. When you answer, she gives you the Master Ball. It is the ultimate ball that can catch any Pokémon without fail.



After beating the Opelucid **Hear about the storm on Route 7** City Gym

At the entrance of the gate to Route 10, the guide tells you about the storm striking Route 7. What could be going on? Use Fly to get to Mistralton City and head for Route 7 (p.



Meet the Pokémon that roams around Unova

When you visit the stormy Route 7, you'll meet Tornadus. It's a Pokémon that roams around the Unova region. Use the information displayed on the electric bulletin boards to

After visiting **Go north to Route 10** Route 7

Heal your Pokémon at the Pokémon Center, and then head for Route 10 (p. 168). Route 10 begins just beyond the gate in the north of Opelucid City. Beyond that you'll find the Badge Check Gates and Victory Road.



Lend an ear to the synth's sound

There is a person playing a synthesizer close to the Pokémon Center. Get close to hear the sound.





OPELUCID CITY (POKÉMON BLACK VERSION

A city that respects history and values old things

Opelucid City

Pokémon Training

Pokémon White Versior



Opelucid City is a city that values its past, so its appearance hasn't changed much over the years. You can enjoy Triple Battles in the Battle House. You'll visit this city to obtain information related to the Legendary Pokémon and take on the Gym.





1 You can visit after completing the main story (p. 231).

© Props	
☐ Big Bag	
☐ Fluffy Beard	
☐ Gift Box	
☐ Scarlet Hat	

	(5) Items
	First visit
	☐ Destiny Knot
	☐ Float Stone
	☐ Fresh Water
	☐ Ring Target
	After lending a Pokémon
	caught in <i>Pokémon Black</i>
	Version that knows Charge
	☐ Cell Battery
E	After defeating the
	Opelucid Gym
i	 Legend Badge
	☐ Master Ball
	☐ TM82 Dragon Tail

		_
Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)		
BridgeMail T		50
Favored Mail		50
Greet Mail		50
Inquiry Mail		50
Like Mail		50
Reply Mail		50
RSVP Mail		50
Thanks Mail		50
Dusk Ball	1,0	00
Quick Ball	1,0	00
Timer Ball	1,0	00

Step

Ghetsis is giving a speech to the people of the city

Ghetsis is giving a speech in front of a fountain when you enter the city and go east. He says that N has joined forces with the Legendary Pokémon and is going to create a new world, and advises everyone to set their Pokémon free. His speech puts the people of the city into turmoil.





OPELUCID CITY (POKÉMON WHITE VERSION)

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Route 9 (to Icirrus City)

Step <

Alder introduces you to **Drayden and Iris**

After Ghetsis leaves, two people upset by his speech remain. They are Drayden and Iris, who hold a clue to the legendary Pokémon. Drayden and Iris invite you to Drayden's house to talk. Visit Drayden's house after looking around the city.



You met Iris in Castelia City

You've already met Iris in Castelia City. She helped you when Team Plasma stole one of Bianca's Pokémon, and she acted as Bianca's bodyguard.

🕽 Opelucid City (*Pokémon White Version*)

Get Props from the old man

An old man who loves the Pokémon Musical lives in the house to the west of the fountain. Talk to him every day to get a Prop to use when you Dress Up your Pokémon. He will give you four different Props. Visit four days in a row to get all of the Props.

Pokémon Training



Check how well you've raised your Pokémon

The girl in the first floor of a house will tell you how strong the first Pokémon in your party is. If she says, "It put in a great effort!" that's proof that your Pokémon has experienced many battles.



Experience Triple Battles in the Battle House

The Battle House is two buildings east of the Opelucid City Gym, and you can enjoy Triple Battles with two Pokémon Trainers here once a day. Also, if you ask the man on the first floor, he will teach you the detailed rules.



Step 5

Show a Pokémon caught in Pokémon Black Version

A man on the second floor of the house on the north side of the Pokémon Center asks you to loan him a Pokémon that knows the move Charge. Trade with someone who has *Pokémon Black Version* for a Pokémon such as Blitzle, Zebstrika, or Klink. He will give you the Cell Battery as thanks.



Step 6

You can't proceed to Route 11

The gate on the east side of the city is connected to Route 11. But you can't go to Route 11 until you complete the main story (p. 231). If you enter the gate and try to go east, a guard will block your way.



Visit everyone to get items

If you talk to the people on the second floor of Drayden's house, or the people on the first floor of the house directly to the west of the Battle House, they will give you items. Visit all of the homes, talk to people, and collect items.

Step 7

Learn about the Legendary Pokémon from Drayden

Go to Drayden's house, and you will hear the story of the Legendary Pokémon. Reshiram and Zekrom, who were once a single Pokémon, became involved in a battle between the two heroes, and split its body into two. But even Drayden doesn't know how to awaken the Pokémon.



Pokémon Training

Take on the Opelucid City Gym

After telling you about the Legendary Pokémon, Drayden asks Iris—who, it turns out, is the Opelucid City Gym Leader—to accept your challenge. Go west from Drayden's house, turn north at the fountain, and you will reach the Gym.

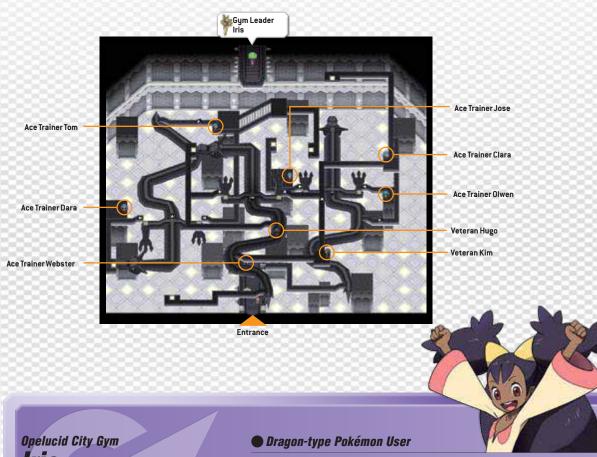


What's the price of Fresh Water?

Talk to Clyde at the entrance of the Opelucid City Gym after beating the Gym, and he will ask to be paid for all of the Fresh Water he has given you! (Luckily, he's joking.)

Gym battle 8

Opelucid City Gym Battle



Hit their weak point with **Ice- or Dragon-type moves**

In this Gym, you proceed by changing the route with switches. Iris's Pokémon are all weak to Ice- and Dragon-type moves. If you don't have any of these moves, use a TM to teach your Pokémon Frost Breath or Blizzard. The move Dragon Dance raises Attack and Speed one level. If it is used several times, you could be in danger of taking big damage, so defeat the opposing Pokémon as quickly as you can.

Recommended Level for your Pokémon

Iris's Pokémon

Lv. 41 Moves to watch out for: Fraxure ♀ Dragon Dance Dragon Lv. 41 Moves to watch out for \bigcirc Druddigon $\stackrel{\circ}{ o}$

Dragon Lv. 43 • Moves to watch out for Ø Haxorus ♀ Dragon Tail Dragon

™ **82** □

In a battle with a Trainer, this move forces another Pokémon to be switched in.



Legend Badge

All Pokémon, including those received in trades, will obey you.



OPELUCID CITY (POKÉMON WHITE VERSION)

After beating the Opelucid Professor Juniper meets you outside the Gym City Gym

Professor Juniper is waiting for you when you leave the Gym after defeating Iris. She was planning to tell you how to reawaken Zekrom, but she hasn't figured out how to do it yet. The Professor guides you to the road to the Pokémon League.

Pokémon Training



After beating **Get the Master Ball from Professor Juniper** the Opelucid City Gym

Just before the gate to Route 10, Professor Juniper asks if you regret going on your journey. When you answer, she gives you the Master Ball. It is the ultimate ball, the one that will surely catch any Pokémon.



After beating **Hear about the storm on Route 7** the Opelucid City Gym

At the entrance of the gate to Route 10, you hear about the storm striking Route 7 from the guide. What could be going on? Use Fly to get to Mistralton City and head for Route 7 (p. 134).



Thorne's a big storm on Routu 71

Meet the Pokémon that roams around Unova

When you visit the stormy Route 7, you'll meet Thundurus. It's a Pokémon that roams around the Unova region. Use the information displayed on the electric bulletin boards to chase it.

After visiting **Go north toward Route 10** Route 7

Heal your Pokémon at the Pokémon Center, and once you are ready, head for Route 10 (p. 168). Route 10 is just beyond the gate in the north of Opelucid City. Beyond that are the Badge Check Gates and Victory Road.



Listen to the musician

There is a person playing a stringed instrument close to the Pokémon Center. Get close to hear the sound.



Stringed Instrument

List of Trainers

Pokémon Training

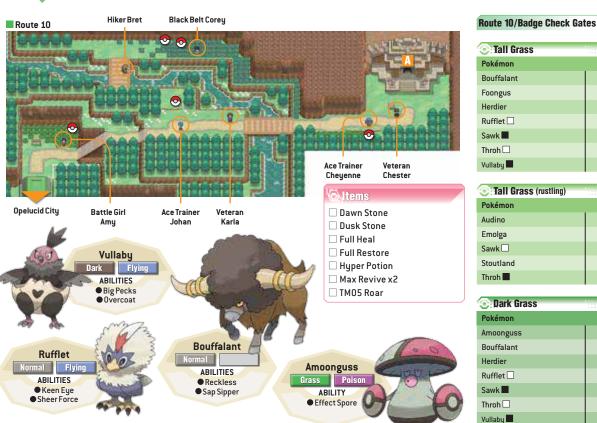


Route 10 is surrounded by green trees and a winding river. Lots of strong Pokémon Trainers also wait for you here. You can pass through the Badge Check Gates at the eastern end of the route if you have the necessary Gym Badges.



0

Λ





Continue east while battling Trainers

Once you enter Route 10 from Opelucid City, go east. Strong Pokémon Trainers are waiting for you all along the way. This route can be challenging, so don't be reckless if your Pokémon get hurt—return to the Opelucid City Pokémon Center for some healing.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

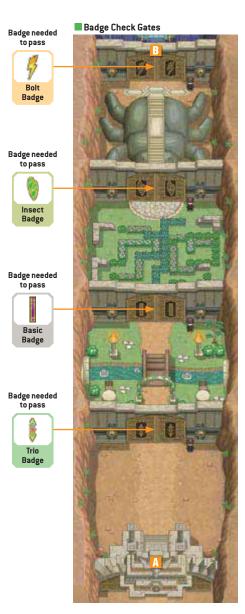
Step 2

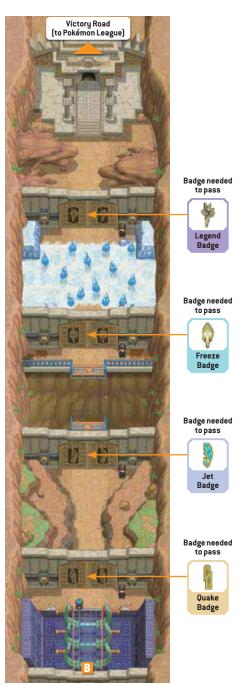
Cheren plants himself in your path

As you are about to finish crossing the bridge over the river, Cheren and Bianca come up from behind you. "You're heading for the Pokémon League, right?" asks Cheren. When you answer him, he says he wants to see how strong you are and challenges you to a battle. Accept the challenge and take him on.



Pokémon Training









Cheren and Bianca cheer you up

After you defeat Cheren, he will acknowledge your strength and heal all of your Pokémon. Bianca gives you a Max Revive. A great trial stands before you, so the two of them give you some words of encouragement and leave.

Pokémon Training



Step <

Collect items in the northern side of the route

Just after you cross the bridge over the river, enter the small northward path covered in tall grass. You can continue to the north side of Route 10. Battle Pokémon Trainers and collect items. Continue over the bridge to the south and hop down the ledge to return to the main path.



A Foongus among us!

Sometimes, when you check items on the ground, a Foongus or Amoonguss will pop out and a battle will start. Both of them disguise themselves as items.



Battle Trainers as you head

When you return from the north side of Route 10, head due east. You will see the Badge Check Gates at the end of the Route. Battle the two Pokémon Trainers in front of the gate and enter at last.





Pass through the Badge Check

There is a door and gate for each of the eight Gym Badges at the Badge Check Gates. The guard at each gate checks your Gym Badge and opens the gate so you can continue.



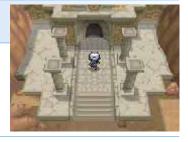
No Badge, no gate

If you don't have the corresponding Badge for each of the eight gates, that gate won't open, and you can't go any further. Visit after you have collected all eight Gym Badges.



Head north to Victory Road

When your eighth Badge has been checked and the gate opens, you have reached the entrance to Victory Road. Victory Road is the greatest obstacle standing between you and the Pokémon League. Get pumped up, and make your charge!



A reminder of your **Gym Battles**

The area after each Badge Check Gate is designed to remind Trainers of each Gym they've faced and defeated. Take a moment to look around each area before you proceed to the next



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

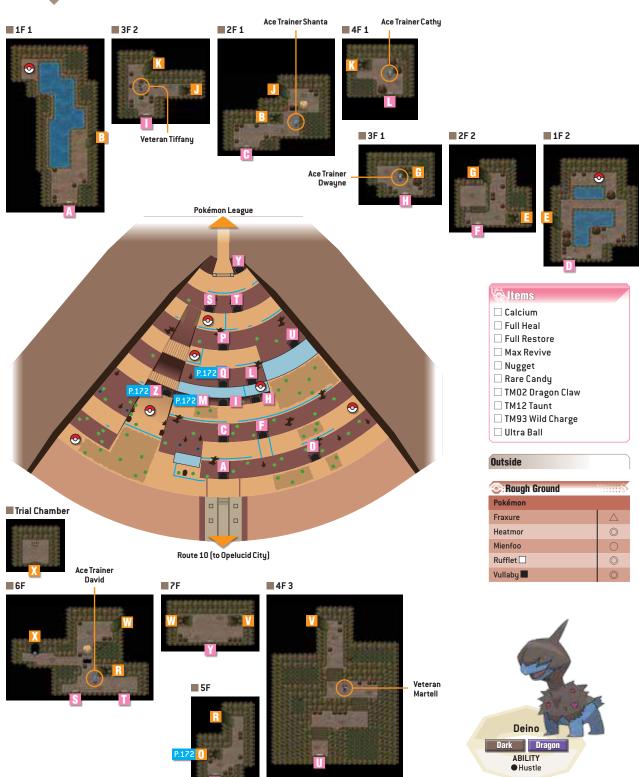
These steep slopes are the last obstacle before the Pokémon League!

Victory Road



Victory Road is carved into a steep cliff dotted with caves. You'll weave in and out of the caves as you climb toward the Pokémon League, and fearsome Pokémon Trainers stand in your way throughout your climb.







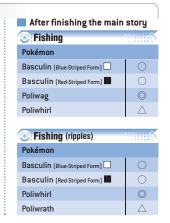


Pokémon Training



1F 1 • 2 Cave Pokémon Boldore Deino Durant Mienfoo Woobat Cave (dust cloud)







Step 1

Excadrill

Proceed while battling Trainers

Head north from the outside and go in to collect an item, and afterward continue into 2F 1. You'll immediately run into Ace Trainer Shanta. There's a rock you can move with Strength just north of her, but you can't push it from this side. After defeating Shanta, you can go outside from the south.



You can come back with Fly

If you use Fly, your Pokémon can take you to any city that has a Pokémon Center. Victory Road is an exception—it isn't a city, but you can use Fly to return to the entrance anyway.



You can slide down the cliff

Outside, you'll see the man on the first floor go sliding down the cliff wall through a gap in the fence. Now you know that you can move down by sliding down through gaps in the fence outside. You'll need to do some sliding to see every corner of Victory Road!



Find items with the Dowsing MCHN

Many items are hidden in Victory Road. Use the Dowsing MCHN to find them.





Make a shortcut with Strength

After sliding down from the gap in the fence, pass through 1F 2 and 2F 2 to reach 3F 1. From there you can reach 3F 2 and 3F 3 from the outside. Climb down the stairs from 3F 2, and push the rock in 2F 1 with Strength. This will make a shortcut from 2F 1 to 3F 2.



Have Doctor Logan heal your Pokémon

Climb the stairs from 3F 3 to 4F 2 and you'll meet Doctor Logan. He will heal all of your Pokémon if you beat him in battle, and you can come back for more healing any time. Remember where Logan is so you can get his help if you need it.

Pokémon Training



Climb every mountain, battle every Trainer

At the end of Victory Road, the Elite Four are waiting in the Pokémon League. Rake in all the Experience Points you can now by battling all the Pokémon Trainers along your way!

Step <

See everything and get all of

Climb the stairs and slide down the cliff from the Doctor on 4F 2 in order to see everything. At the top of the cliff is a man standing at the western edge. Slide down from either side of him to collect items in different places.



Trainers aren't your only source of **Experience Points**

The wild Pokémon in Victory Road are around Lv. 40. That means you'll get a good number of Experience Points for defeating them. Battle as many Pokémon as you can to make your Pokémon stronger.



The northbound path goes to the Pokémon League

When you go outside from the seventh floor, head west. You will immediately come upon a path that extends straight north. If you go north on this road, you will reach the Pokémon League (p. 174). Defeat all of the Pokémon Trainers, collect all of the items, and head for the Pokémon League.



After capturing Cobalion

Capture Terrakion in the Trial Chamber

After you've captured Cobalion in Mistralton Cave (p. 145), you can enter the Trial Chamber in the west part of the sixth floor. The Legendary Pokémon Terrakion is waiting for you inside. When you talk to it, the battle begins. Capture it so you can complete your Pokédex.







Pokémon League

Pokémon Training



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

POKÉMON LEAGUE 🚷

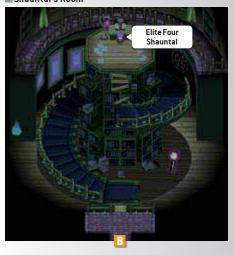
The Pokémon League is a place to challenge the best Trainers in the region. Now that you've finally reached the Pokémon League, it's time to take on the Elite Four.



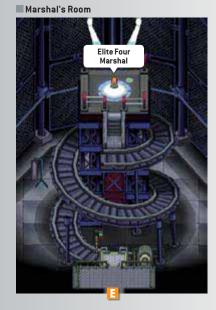




Shauntal's Room





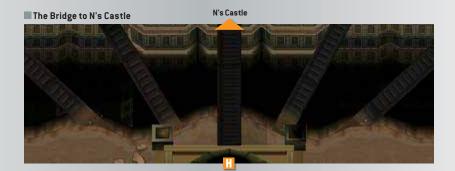


Victory Road (to Opelucid City)

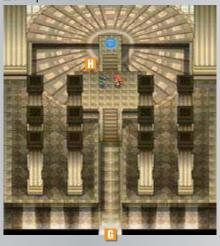
Pokémon Training

List of Trainers





Champion's Room





Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)	
Heal Ball	300
Dusk Ball	1,000
Luxury Ball	1,000
Nest Ball	1,000
Net Ball	1,000
Quick Ball	1,000
Repeat Ball	1,000
Timer Ball	1,000

Check your party Pokémon

Before taking on the Pokémon League, check the Pokémon in your party. Refer to pages 177 and 178 to check whether your Pokémon's moves will be effective against the Elite Four's Pokémon. And be sure to prepare your party in every way, such as by healing your Pokémon at the Pokémon Center.

Pokémon Training



Use items to heal your Pokémon

You can't return to the Pokémon Center once you start your battle with the Elite Four. Once you've ended your battle with one of them, use items to restore your Pokémon's health before you challenge the next member of the Elite Four. Check to make sure your Pokémon's PP hasn't gone down too much.

Step 2

Prepare yourself for the Elite Four

Stock up on many different items so you are prepared if your Pokémon's HP gets low or if they are affected by a status condition during your battles with the Elite Four. In particular, it's a good idea to buy lots of Full Restores because they heal your Pokémon's HP and status problems at the same time.



Challenge the Elite Four in any order

The Elite Four use Ghost-, Dark-, Psychic-, and Fighting-type Pokémon. Fight them in any order you like, based on the situation with your party. Then, you can take on the next Elite Four member after making uour Pokémon even a little bit stronger.

Step 3

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

POKÉMON LEAGUE 🕲



Check the Pokémon League's rules

Once you enter the Elite Four's plaza in the Pokémon League, there's no going back. You can battle the Elite Four in any order you like, but if you are defeated, you will have to start the challenge over from the beginning even if you have defeated several of the Elite Four. Keep this special rule in the back of your mind.



Save, just to be sure

If you lose to any of the Elite Four, you have to start the whole Elite Four battle over again. Save after each victory. If you do, you can restart from where you saved

Step 4

Take the Pokémon League challenge

Once you're prepared, approach the man at the entrance of the Elite Four's plaza. He will explain the rules of the Pokémon League. If you respond "Yes" at the end, he will open the way for you. The time for your battle with the Elite Four has finally come! Steel yourself and go inside.



The Elite Four's Caitlin appeared in the past

The Elite Four's Caitlin appeared in the Battle Frontier in Pokémon Platinum, HeartGold, and SoulSilver Versions. She must have risen to the Elite Four in this new region.





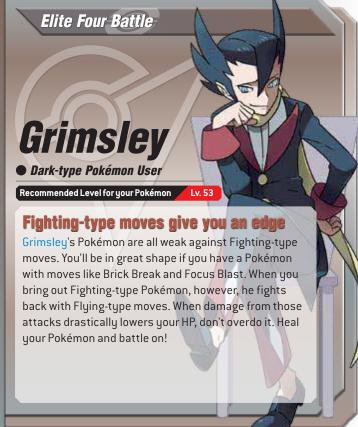


Deal massive damage with Ghost- and Dark-type moves

Shauntal's Pokémon know more than Ghost-type moves—they use many powerful moves such as the Psychic-type move Psychic and the Ground-type move Earthquake. You are at a disadvantage if you battle with Pokémon that are weak against these types. Strike her Pokémon's weak points with Ghost-, Dark-, and Water-type moves to do big damage.







UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

POKÉMON LEAGUE 🕲



Elite Four Battle

Pokémon Training







After defeating Check the shining statue

Pokémon Training

After you defeat all four of the Elite Four, visit the statue in the center of the Elite Four's plaza. Check the plaque on the shining statue, and go underground. Go underground and head north. Soon, you will see a building on top of the plateau. This is the Champion's Room. Go inside.



Until you beat the Elite Four, you can't proceed

You can't go to the Champion's room, where Alder is, until you've beaten all of the Elite Four. The statue in the Elite Four's Plaza will not shine, and it won't move, even if you check it.

After defeating N has defeated Alder the Elite Four

N and Alder are facing each other in the Champion's Room. The battle is already over, and amazingly, Alder has lost to N. Alder begs N not to separate Pokémon and people, but N will hear none of it.



After defeating A giant castle appears

N realizes you have obtained the Light Stone (Dark Stone) and is pleased about that. But he declares this place isn't suitable for the Legendary Pokémon. Moments later, a giant castle rises out of the ground, as if it's surrounding the Pokémon League.



After defeating **Go into N's Castle to defend peace** the Elite Four

N tells you to come inside, and he goes into N's Castle. Alder and Cheren give you their thoughts on the situation. To settle everything with N and Team Plasma, climb the stairs to N's Castle (p. 180).





UNDVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

N'S CASTLE (6)

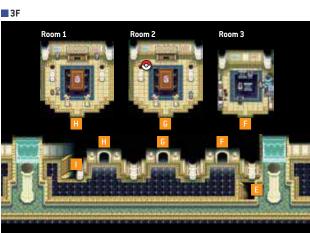
List of Trainers

N's Castle

Pokémon Training



N's Castle was constructed in secret over many years, and it was hidden in the land around the Pokémon League. You enter the stronghold alone to prevent N and Team Plasma from separating people from Pokémon.



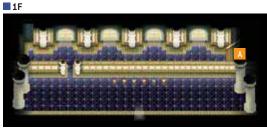














The Gym Leaders to the rescue

When you go inside, six of the Seven Sages are waiting on the first floor. When they are about to attack you, the Gym Leaders jump into the fray and take them on for you. Leave this battle to the Gym Leaders and go on ahead.



What happened to **Striaton City's Gym Leaders?**

Striaton City's Gym Leaders, Chili, Cress, and Cilan, aren't among the Gym Leaders that stand up to the Seven Sages. The truth is, Bianca went to get them, but she didn't make it in time.

The Shadow Triad helps you

When you reach the second floor, one of the Shadow Triad appears. The Shadow Triad member tells you not to fear, because you can heal your Pokémon and access your PC even inside N's Castle. It's a nice thing to hear from a surprising place.

Pokémon Training



Step



Anthea heals your Pokémon

Two women are standing in Room 2 on the second floor: Anthea on the left and Concordia to the right. If you talk to Anthea, she will restore your Pokémon's health. Your Pokémon are probably hurt after the battle with the Elite Four, so talk to her and get their health restored.



Listen to Concordia's story

In Room 2 on the second floor, talk to Concordia to hear a story about N's past. Because of the strange way Ghetsis raised him, he doesn't trust people—only Pokémon.

Step

Use the room with the PC

The room to your right when you reach the third floor is Room 3. It's a laboratory. You'll find a PC next to the entrance, so you can change your party Pokémon here. Any time you want to change your party Pokémon around while in the castle, use this PC.



Step <

Talk to the Grunt to return to the Pokémon League

When you talk to the Grunt in Room 1 on the third floor, he will send you back to the Pokémon Center at the Pokémon League. When you need more items, briefly return to the Pokémon League. Talk to the Team Plasma Grunt in the Pokémon Center to return to N's Castle.



Team Plasma's plans for the PC

In Room 3 on the third floor, the researcher tells you Team Plasma managed to break into the Pokémon Storage System. On N's command, they plan to release all of the Pokémon stored in

Step <



Peek inside N's room

Another member of the Shadow Triad appears when you reach the fourth floor and tells you that the room to your left is N's room. Why is he living in a room full of toys?





Ghetsis comes out of the room

Climb to the fifth floor and go north to reach the throne room. When you try to enter, Ghetsis comes out from inside. He is excited because his ambitions are about to be realized. He tells you that you should see if you have what it takes to be the hero, and he invites you into the throne room.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

N's Castle

Step 4

N approaches you from the throne

N is sitting on the throne when you enter the room. He tells you to show him the depth of your determination and calls the Legendary Pokémon Zekrom (Reshiram). The Legendary Pokémon breaks through the far wall and floats down to N.

Pokémon Training



Step <

UNDVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

N'S CASTLE (6)

The stone turns into Reshiram (Zekrom)

When Zekrom (Reshiram) comes to N, the Light Stone (Dark Stone) suddenly jumps out of your Bag. Floating in the air, the stone slowly absorbs the surrounding aura, and reawakens Reshiram (Zekrom).







Catch Reshiram!

First, use Ground-, Rock-, or Dragon-type moves to lower its HP quickly. After that, lower its HP gradually with Fire- or Grass-type moves. Even if you accidentally knock it out, as long as your party and Boxes are not full, you can keep challenging it until you catch it.

Pokémon White Version

Catch Zekrom!

First, use Ice-, Ground-, or Dragon-type moves to lower its HP quickly. After that, lower its HP gradually with Fire-, Grass, or Electric-type moves. Even if you accidentally knock it out, as long as your party and Boxes are not full, you can keep challenging it until you catch it.





Put Reshiram (Zekrom) in your party

When you catch Reshiram (Zekrom), select whether you want to add it to your party. Your battle with N is up next, and he sends out Zekrom (Reshiram). Put this Pokémon in your party and have the two Legendary Pokémon battle.



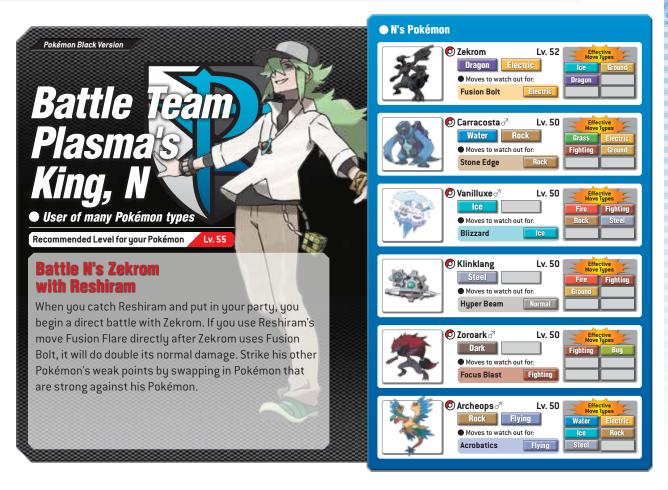
The first Pokémon in your party changes

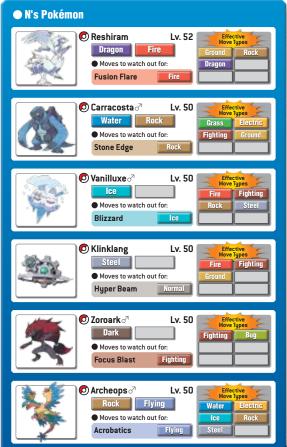
When you add the caught Reshiram (Zekrom) to your party, it will always become the first Pokémon in your party no matter what position Pokémon you swapped out for it was in. That way it will be the first Pokémon that appears when you battle

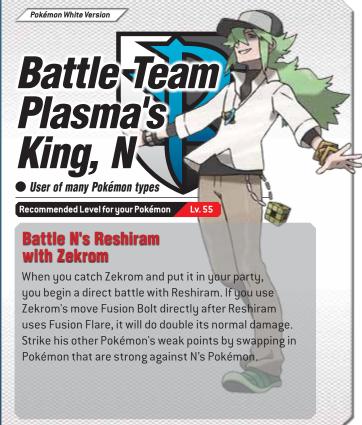
Pokémon Training











⊗ N S Castle



The final foe, Ghetsis, stands in your way

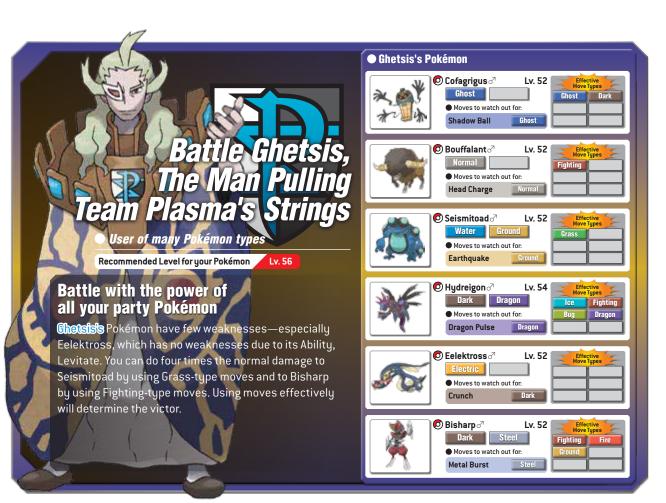
After you defeat N, Ghetsis appears. Even though N has been defeated, he hasn't given up on his ambitions. Ghetsis says that those who get in the way must be eliminated before challenging you to battle. It's time for the final battle. Prepare yourself and accept the challenge.

Pokémon Training



N is Ghetsis's son?!

After you defeat N in battle, Ghetsis's words imply that N is Ghetsis's son. Apparently, they are father and son who share the same last name: Harmonia.



(0)

Defeat Ghetsis to see the ending!

Defeating **Chassis** in the Pokémon battle will mean the end of your fight with Team Plasma, and the story comes to a close. The adventure, however, is not over yet. Even after the end of the main story, there are new areas to explore. Unknown adventures await! After the end credits, you will set out for Nuvema Town again on a new journey and adventure (p. 186).







Keep Training Your Pokémon for the Tough Battles Ahead

Newly accessible areas are full of tough Trainers

Pokémon Training

In the areas you can access after completing the main story, the Pokémon Trainers and the wild Pokémon are very strong. Even if you were good enough to beat Ghetsis, you'll find yourself in tough battles. Look around after finishing the main story, and strengthen your Pokémon so you can defeat the Champion.

Examples of strong Pokémon



Use TMs to teach your Pokémon powerful moves

The easiest way to make your Pokémon more powerful is to teach them strong moves with TMs. Some recommended moves are TMO2 Dragon Claw, which is found on the third floor of Victory Road, and TM29 Psychic, which you can get on Route 13.





Level up your Pokémon in Victory Road

Before you finish the main story, the area with the highestlevel wild Pokémon is Victory Road. Go back there to check out every corner, and level up the Pokémon you want to make stronger. Give the Pokémon you are leveling up the Lucky Egg to hold, so they gain increased Experience Points from battle.





Bring powerful Pokémon over with Poké Transfer

If you have a strong Pokémon in Pokémon Diamond, Pearl, Platinum, HeartGold, or SoulSilver Version, go to the Poké Transfer Lab on Route 15 and use Poké Transfer to bring your high-level Pokémon into your game. Put your old friends in your new party.



Take your first steps into a new area

Once you defeat N and Ghetsis, the main story comes to a close. Your adventure, however, is not over yet. You become able to visit new areas, discover Pokémon from other regions, and take on new challenges and exciting events.

Pokémon Training

A New World of Adventure



Nuvema

Your mom's twin downstairs

When you come downstairs from your room, there are two of your mom! Actually, one of them is Looker, a member of the International Police. Looker changes out of his disguise and asks you to look for Team Plasma's Seven Sages. Ghetsis is gone, so look for the whereabouts of the other six (p. 233).



Look at your **Trainer Card**

When you meet certain conditions, your Trainer Card's color changes. One of these conditions is finishing the main story with the battle in N's Castle. Check your card and see whether it has changed from green to purple.



Get the Super Rod from Looker

When you agree to search for the Seven Sages, Looker gives you the Super Rod. When you use it in the water you can catch even-stronger Pokémon that live in the water. Give the rod a try! When you see an exclamation mark (!) press the A Button to reel in the Pokémon.





Super Rod



Reunite with Cheren and Bianca

When you leave your house, Cheren and Bianca are waiting. When Cheren asks what everyone is going to do, Bianca says she plans to go to Black City (White Forest). You can now visit Black City (White Forest).



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

(a) NEW ADVENTURES AWAIT

Upgrade your Pokédex

Cedric Juniper walks up to you while you are talking with Bianca and Cheren. Apparently, he has received the National Pokédex data from a colleague. Cedric Juniper upgrades everyone's Pokédex.

Pokémon Training



Show your Pokédex to the two professors

After you complete the main story, Professor Juniper will tell you how many Pokémon you've seen at her lab in Nuvema Town. After uou've seen all of the Pokémon in the Pokédex, she will evaluate the Pokédex based on how many Pokémon you've obtained. Cedric Juniper evaluates how many Pokémon you've obtained, including those from other regions.



Head for newly accessible

After you complete the main story, you can visit new areas in addition to the places you've already been. Use Fly to go to Nimbasa City and head east to go to Route 16. Look around the new areas from the Marvelous Bridge (p. 201).





Search for Rood of the Seven Sages

Go to Route 18 from Route 17. Continue west, and you will find Rood, one of the Seven Sages, on the beach. Talk to him, and he will give you TM32 Double Team after telling you about N and Ghetsis. After that, Looker comes to arrest him.



Use Surf from Route 1

Route 18 is connected to Route 17. When you leave for Route 1 from Nuvema Town, use Surf and head to the gate to the west. Once you pass through the gate, you're on Route 17.

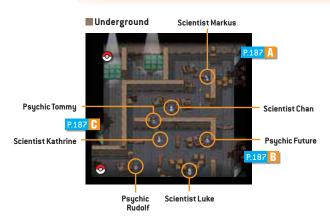
Dreamyard Map

Outside









Pokémon Training

Underground	
O: Dark Grass	······································
Pokémon	
Ariados	Δ
Kricketune	0
Ledian	Δ
Munna	0
Raticate	0

Dreamyard

Battle the Trainers underground

In the Dreamyard, the obstacles are gone, and you can enter the underground room. Some Pokémon Trainers in the underground room will run when you approach them. Wait around the corner from them and talk to them from the side when they approach to make it easier to battle them.



On Fridays Musharna appears

On Fridays, Musharna appears in the tall grass north of the underground room. The Musharna you meet here have the Hidden Ability Telepathy. Musharna with this Ability don't appear elsewhere, so make sure to catch it!

Dreamyard

Search for Gorm of the Seven Sages

When you climb the stairs to the south of the underground room in the Dreamyard, Gorm of the Seven Sages pops out from behind a wall. After he tells you about N's Castle and Team Plasma, Gorm gives you TM75 Swords Dance. After that, he is arrested by Looker.



New wallpaper is added

After you complete the main story, check your PC. There will be new wallpaper for your PC Boxes. Check out the newly added wallpaper, such as the Reshiram and Zekrom designs.



Battle the girl you traded with

If you trade Pokémon with the girl in the house in Nacrene City, you can battle her after you finish the main story. The girl uses the evolved form of the Pokémon you traded to her. In *Pokémon Black Version*, it's Whimsicott, and in *Pokémon White Version*, it's Lilligant.



Trade and battle even after finishing the main story

Even if you wait to make this trade after you finish the main story, you can battle right after you're done. After trading, leave the house, and then come back in and talk to the girl.



Talk to the Sound Designer at GAME FREAK

Visit the GAME FREAK building in Castelia City and take the elevator to the 22nd floor. If you talk to the Sound Designer, the background music will change to the music of Team Rocket, the villains of *Pokémon HeartGold* and *SoulSilver Versions*.



Enjoy a Pokémon battle at GAME FREAK

Walkthrough

Visit the 22nd floor of the GAME FREAK building in Castelia City. You can battle Morimoto, across from the Sound Designer, once a day. Morimoto's Pokémon are very strong, around level 75 to 77. Take him on after raising your Pokémon's levels enough.

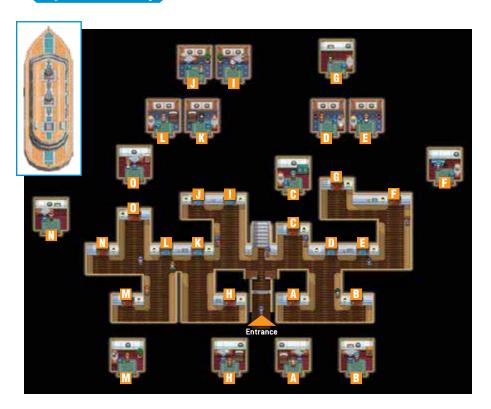
Pokémon Training



Visit again once your Pokédex is complete

When you complete the Unova Pokédex, visit the 22nd floor of GAME FREAK's building. Talk to the Game Director, and he will give you an award certificate. After that, the award certificate will be hung on the wall in your bedroom in Nuvema Town.

Royal Unova Map



Castelia City

Ride the Royal Unova in the evening

You can board the Royal Unova at Castelia City in the evening. If you defeat a certain number of Trainers in the ship, you can get a prize. The challenge is different on different days of the week. Whistles blow several times in the ship, and eventually the ship will return to port. Defeat the Trainers within the time limit.



Enjoy the scenery from the deck

Climb the stairs in the center of the ship, and you can see the sunset from the deck. Take a break from battling Trainers to gaze at the beautiful sight of the Unova region changing from twilight to night.

Number of Trainers per day and prizes

Day	Number of Trainers	Price
Monday	Four people	Lava Cookie
Tuesday	Three people	Berry Juice
Wednesday	Four people	Lava Cookie
Thursday	Five people	Old Gateau
Friday	Four people	Lava Cookie
Saturday	Six people	RageCandyBar
Sundau	Seven people	Rare Candu



Talk to the crew to get hints

Talk to the crew inside to learn how many Trainers you need to beat and to get hints on whether the Trainers are on the left side or right side of the ship



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NEW ADVENTURES AWAIT

Cofagrigus

Relic Castle Map

Pokémon Training



Desert Resort (p. 100)

☐ TM04 Calm Mind ☐ TM26 Earthquake





Tower B1F

Tower B2F







UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NEW ADVENTURES AWAIT





Passage 🗓









Passage 12



Lowest Floor—Deepest Part















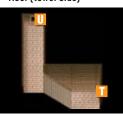








■ Hallway leading to the lowest floor (tower side)





floor (castle side)

■ Hallway leading to the lowest

Relic Castle (p. 103)

Desert Resort

Get a RageCandyBar

When you try to enter the Relic Castle, Professor Juniper comes out from inside. The professor is checking the Pokémon statues, which she says are actually Darmanitan in a sleeping state. She gives you a RageCandyBar to wake up one of the Darmanitan.



RageCandyBars can



Catch Darmanitan!

Check the Pokémon statues while you are holding a RageCandyBar and Darmanitan will wake up and attack you. The Darmanitan here have the Hidden Ability Zen Mode. These Darmanitan don't appear anywhere else, so make sure to catch them and use them in battle.

Pokémon Training



Trainers on the Royal Unova on Saturday (p. 189). If you beat all of them, you get a RageCandyBar.



Relic Castle

New areas of the Relic Castle

After entering the Relic Castle, continue until you reach B5F, which you've visited before. Sand has piled up so you can reach the door on the east side of the room. Go inside and meet some remnants of Team Plasma. They are protecting one of the Seven Sages. Accept the challenge for a Pokémon battle.



Sand falls down to B5F

Fall through the flowing sands to B5F. Refer to p. 102 to 103, and head for the hallway connected to the lowest floor.



Go from the maze to the tower

The lowest floor of the Relic Castle is a maze. Use Passage 1, where a Team Plasma member is standing, as a guide. Head directly west from Passage 1, and you can go to the tower. Climb the stairs and continue to Tower 1F. Get the item, but don't cross the ledge. Go back down to Passage 1.



Relic Castle

Return to the maze and go to the deepest room

After getting the item in Tower 1F, return to the underground and go directly east. Return to Passage 1, where a member of Team Plasma is standing. Following the map to the left, from there go south, west, and then south. Then, go west two rooms, and you will reach Passage 6.



Relic Castle

Search for Ryoku of the **Seven Sages**

Ryoku of the Seven Sages is standing in front of the north exit of Passage 6, as if he were blocking it. Talk to him to learn about the Sun Pokémon Volcarona, and then he gives you TMO4 Calm Mind. After that, Looker arrives to arrest Ryoku.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

NEW ADVENTURES AWAIT

Relic Castle

Volcarona appears in the deepest room

Go north from where Ryoku was, and head for the deepest room on the lowest floor. Volcarona is at the end of the room. Ryoku planned to give this Pokémon to Ghetsis. Talk to it, and it will attack. This Pokémon doesn't appear in the wild, so make sure to catch it.

Pokémon Training



Volcarona is Larvesta's evolution

The Egg you get from the prefab house on Route 18 will hatch into a Larvesta. If you raise Larvesta to Lv. 59, it will evolve into Volcarona. If you can't catch Volcarona here, you can get its entry in the Pokédex by evolving Larvesta.



Nimbasa City

Take the Battle Test at the Battle Institute

You can now take the Battle Test at Nimbasa City's Battle Institute. The Battle Test assigns ranks based on the results of battling five Trainers (p. 203). Aim for a high rank by challenging it with your best-trained Pokémon.



The Judge appears in the Battle Subway

The Judge will appear in the Battle Subway's Gear Station. He will size up the potential of a Pokémon in your party. Have him help you when you're deciding which Pokémon to train.

Nimbasa City

Visit Big Stadium and Small Court

At the practice areas in Big Stadium and Small Court, you can enjoy battles with Trainers every day. After you finish the main story, the number of Trainers in the practice areas increases, and the level of your opponents' Pokémon is dramatically higher. Enjoy challenging battles daily.



Some Trainers give you items

The Trainers you fight at Big Stadium and Small Court change every day (except for the Backers and athletes). Some of them will give you valuable items, such as Max Revive and PP Max, after you defeat them. Visit and battle every day to get lots of items!



Cheren leaves for Victory Road

When you go to Route 5, you'll find Cheren standing there. Approach him, and he'll start talking to you. After he announces his plan to evaluate himself at Victory Road, he leaves. After this, you can battle with him once a day on the seventh floor of Victory Road (p. 196).



Battle the boy you traded with

If you trade Pokémon with the boy in the house in Driftveil City, you can battle him after you finish the main story. The boy will use the Minccino you traded him, but it has evolved into a Cinccino. Have a serious match with Cinccino.

Pokémon Training



Trade and battle even after finishing the main story

Even if you wait to make this trade after you finish the main story, you can battle right after you're done. After trading, leave the house, and then come back in and talk to the boy.



Buy Incense at the Driftveil Market

When you go to the Driftveil Market, there is a new salesperson. You can buy nine types of incense, such as Odd Incense or Lax Incense. They all sell for an expensive 9,600 in prize money, but many of them are useful in battle. Save money and make sure to buy some.



Incense can be bought after you complete the main story

Item	Effect	Price
Full Incense	When held by a Pokémon, this item makes it slower in battle.	9,600
Lax Incense	When held by a Pokémon, this item raises evasion.	9,600
Luck Incense	It doubles a battle's prize money if the holding Pokémon joins in.	9,600
Odd Incense	When held by a Pokémon, it boosts the power of Psychic-type moves.	9,600
Pure Incense	It helps keep wild Pokémon away if the holder is the first one in the party.	9,600
Rock Incense	When held by a Pokémon, it boosts the power of Rock-type moves.	9,600
Rose Incense	When held by a Pokémon, it boosts the power of Grass-type moves.	9,600
Sea Incense	When held by a Pokémon, it boosts the power of Water-type moves.	9,600
Wave Incense	When held by a Pokémon, it boosts the power of Water-type moves.	9,600











Cold Storage

Search for Zinzolin of the Seven Sages

When you enter the Cold Storage, check the refrigerated containers and you'll find Zinzolin of the Seven Sages. Zinzolin talks about how working with Ghetsis made him feel alive, and then he gives you TMO1 Hone Claws. After that, he is arrested by Looker.



Chargestone

Search for Bronius of the Seven Sages

Head to B2F in Chargestone Cave, and go south. Bronius of the Seven Sages is standing where the path comes to a dead end. After you defeat the Team Plasma Grunt standing with him, Bronius gives you TM69 Rock Polish. After that, he is arrested by Looker.





Celestial Tower

Listen to Alder's story on the roof

Climb to the fifth floor of the Celestial Tower to find Alder. When you approach him, he tells you about his former partner, who is resting here, and the reason he left on his journey. After that, Alder tells you he will be waiting for you in the Pokémon League and leaves.

Pokémon Training



Twist Mountain

Get Fossils from the Worker

Talk to the Worker in Lower Level 1 in Twist Mountain, and you can get a Pokémon Fossil once a day. The Fossil you get is random, so you might get a Fossil you've received before. Talk to him every day and get all seven Fossils so you can register them to your Pokédex.



Restore the Fossils at the museum

Visit Nacrene City after obtaining the Pokémon Fossils. Make space in your party, enter the Nacrene Museum, and talk to the woman on the right in the reception area. She will restore the Pokémon from the Fossil.

Pokémon you can restore from Fossils obtained at Twist Mountain





Battle Reshiram (Zekrom) again

If your party and Boxes are full when you meet Reshiram in Pokémon Black Version or Zekrom in Pokémon White Version in N's Castle, you can't catch it. If you go to Dragonspiral Tower after completing the main story, you will have another chance to catch Reshiram (Zekrom) on the seventh floor.



Challenger's Cave Map

Pokémon Training

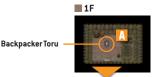
Ace Trainer Terry

B2F

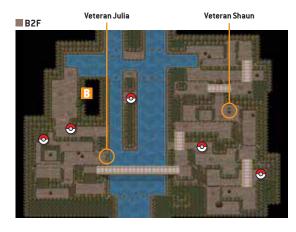










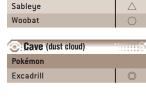


Atems	
☐ Black Belt	
□ Nugget	
□ Oval Stone	
☐ PP Up	
☐ Protein	
☐ Timer Ball	
☐ TM71 Stone Edge	



© Cave	
Pokémon	
Boldore	0
Graveler	0
Lickitung	
Mawile	
Riolu	
Sableye	\triangle
Woobat	0
	•
Cave (dust cloud)	
Pokémon	
Excadrill	0
Excadriii	





Mawile Riolu

Challenger's

See everything and battle Trainers

Challenger's Cave, which you can access from Route 9, is a sprawling cave with three floors. Inside, five Pokémon Trainers are waiting. Use Flash to light up the cave. Collect items and battle the Trainers.



0

 \triangle

 \bigcirc

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Teach your Pokémon the strongest Dragon-type move

In Drayden's house in Opelucid City, you can have Iris (in *Pokémon Black Version*) or Drayden (in *Pokémon White Version*) teach your Pokémon the strongest Dragon-type move—Draco Meteor. Teach this move to a Dragon-type Pokémon with high friendship.

Pokémon Training



Victory Road

Have a Pokémon battle with Cheren

Go to Victory Road from the Pokémon League and continue to the seventh floor. If you've talked to him on Route 5, Cheren will be there. You can battle Cheren once a day. Enjoy battles with his toughened-up Pokémon.



Battle every day to strengthen your Pokémon

Cheren's Pokémon are at a very high level, so you get a lot of Experience Points for defeating them. To prepare for the tough battle ahead at the Pokémon League, come here every day to make your Pokémon stronger.



Pokémon League

Take on the Elite Four and the Champion

After you have seen all of the areas that open up after finishing the main story, it's time to take on the Pokémon League. The Elite Four and the Champion are tough—their Pokémon are around levels 71 through 77. Make sure to raise your party Pokémon well and stock up on healing items before challenging them.



Check the statue after defeating the Elite Four

Even though you defeated the Elite Four during the main story, you must battle them again to challenge the Champion. After you've emerged victorious from your battle with the Elite Four, check the statue, and proceed to the underground.



Pokémon Training



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH







Lv. 71

Caitlin's Pokémon





<u>UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH</u>

NEW ADVENTURES AWAIT













Sigilyph ♀

🧖 Musharna ♀

Moves to watch out for **Dream Eater**

Moves to watch out for

Flash Cannon



Pokémon Training

























Gaitlin

Psychic-type Pokémon User

Recommended Level for your Pokémon

Utilize Ghost-, Dark-, and Fire-type moves

Caitlin has added Metagross and Bronzong to her party. Both of these Pokémon are weak to Fire-type moves. TM35 Flamethrower is a good choice for a powerful Firetype move that can be used by many types of Pokémon. Watch out for the move Flatter—it'll leave your Pokémon confused.

Lv. 78



Marshal

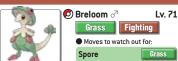
Fighting-type Pokémon User

Recommended Level for your Pokémon Lv. 78

Psychic-type moves give you an advantage

Marshal has added Breloom and Toxicroak to his party. All of his Pokémon are weak to Psychic-type moves especially Toxicroak, who takes four times the normal damage. Use TM29 Psychic to teach this move to a Pokémon in your party. If you have Flying-type moves, you can strike all of his weak points as well.

















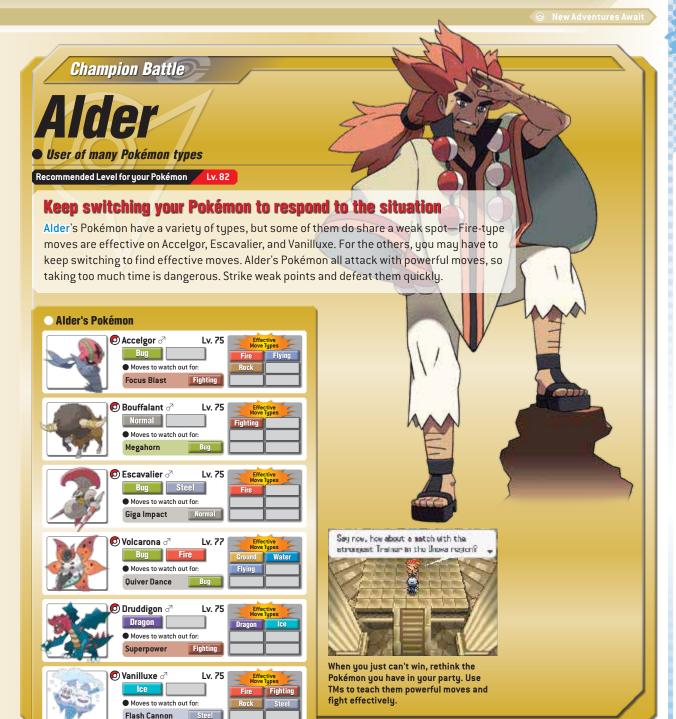








Pokémon Training



Defeat the Champion and Enter the Hall of Fame!

When you defeat Alder, you'll enter the Hall of Fame, and you and your party Pokémon will be recorded for posterity by the device deep in the Pokémon League. Here, you will see the ending credits again. Now, it's time to set out on a journey to complete your Pokédex.





ous items and e people who buy them

Some people in the Unova region will buy only certain items, but they will pay handsomely for them. If you sell these items to them, they will pay more than the Poké Mart would. There are also some special items that the Poké Mart won't buy.



Sell the items you get for a lot

Pokémon Training



If you've got food, she'll buy it

Where: Trailer on Route 5

In addition to all types of Berries, she will buy items that have names related to food, such as Lucky Egg and Casteliacone. You can't sell BalmMushrooms to the Poké Mart, so sell them to the Maid.



Head west from Nimbasa City. Right after you enter Route 5, you'll see the trailer where the Maid lives.



If you've got gems, he'll buy them

Where: Icirrus City Pokémon Center

He will buy the gems you can find in dust clouds, plus the stones related to Pokémon evolution. The Poké Mart won't buy Pearl Strings, Big Nuggets, or Comet Shards, but you can sell them to him.



The old gentleman who will buy stones is in the Icirrus City Pokémon Center.



If you have something cool, he'll buy it

Where: Prefab house on Route 18

The guy in sunglasses says he'll buy "something cool" from you, but doesn't specify that what he wants is the Rare Bone. Rarely, if you catch a wild Crustle in the dark grass, it will be holding this item. If you happen to catch a Crustle holding a Rare Bone, be sure to sell the item to this guy!



Head for Route 18 from Route 17, and enter the prefab house on the plateau. A man in sunglasses is at the north wall.



If you have artifacts and old relics, he'll buy them

Where: The big villa in Undella Town

He'll buy the five types of flutes you can get from the sunglasses-wearing man on Route 13, plus rare items such as Relic Gold and Relic Vase, which are found somewhere in the Unova region. They will fetch an astounding price.



Enter the big villa in Undella Town. At the back of the room to the west is a rich man who buys items.

(p. 216)

Marvelous Bridge

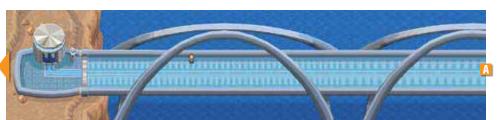
Pokémon Training

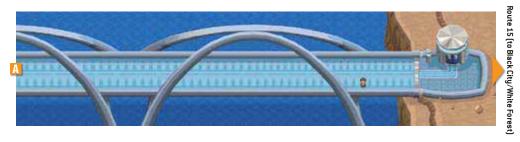


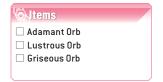
The Marvelous Bridge is a beautiful bridge that connects Route 16 to Route 15. Looking out from the bridge, you only see the ocean. Above the bridge, flying Pokémon come and go, casting their shadows on the bridge.

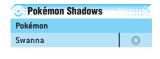
Field Moves Needed













Step 1

Enter the Marvelous Bridge from Route 16

Go east from Nimbasa City to Route 16. Keep going east and you'll arrive at the Marvelous Bridge. Ride the elevator and you can walk on top of the bridge. Continue east from there.



500 gets you a Magikarp

Talk to the man on the bridge, and he'll sell you a Magikarp for 500 in prize money. You can't buy it if your party is full, so if you're interested, make space in your party before you talk to him.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Step 2 Get items from the Shadow Triad

Pokémon Training

When you go east, the Shadow Triad suddenly appears. Saying it is at Ghetsis's request, they hand you the Adamant Orb, the Lustrous Orb, and the Griseous Orb. After they give you the items, they suddenly disappear.



The Griseous Orb is related to a Pokémon

The Griseous Orb you receive from the Shadow Triad has something to do with the Forme change of Giratina, a Legendary Pokémon who lives in another region (p. 249).

Step 3 Cros

Cross the bridge to reach Route 15

At the eastern end of the bridge, there's an elevator. Ride the elevator down, and keep going east. Once you get through the gate, you're at Route 15. You can encounter Pokémon from other regions in the tall grass of Route 15 (p. 204).



The mysteriously vanishing girl

Sometimes a girl stands next to the man on the east side of the bridge. When you approach, she disappears. When you talk to the lady at the base of the elevator, she says there used to be a girl who always played with Abra before the bridge was built...

After visiting. Watch the famous Patrat show Village Bridge:

If you talk to the lady with the Patrat in the house on Village Bridge, you can watch the Patrat show on the Marvelous Bridge. If you correctly guess which Patrat is holding the Big Mushroom, she'll give you the item.



Battle the Trainer in front of the elevator

Ace Trainer Glinda, who stands just a little past where you get off the east-side elevator, will challenge you to a Triple Battle in Pokémon Black Version or a Rotation Battle in Pokémon White Version.

After you defeat Ghetsis in N's Castle and see the ending credits, you can take the Battle Test in the Battle Institute in Nimbasa City. Use well-

Pokémon Training

trained Pokémon to take the test, and aim for the highest rank, Master Rank.

The results of your battle with five Trainers are ranked

In the Battle Test you receive points depending on the results of your battles with five Trainers, and you're given a rank based on those points. Depending on how you fought and which Pokémon you used, your score changes. Test yourself often for a high score!



Check your results on the computer

Check the black PC next to the usual PC to see your results so far.

Choose your Pokémon

Choose three Pokémon from your party or Battle Box when taking the Single Battle test, and four when taking the Double Battle test. You may not use duplicate Pokémon or duplicate held items.



Ranks are based on the number of points

	Rank	Points Received
*****	Master Rank	Over 6,000 points
*****	Elite Rank	Over 5,000 points
****	Hyper Rank	Over 4,000 points
****	Super Rank	Over 3,000 points
***	Normal Rank	Over 2,000 points
****	Novice Rank	Over 1,000 points
*****	Beginner Rank	Less than 1,000



After each battle, your Pokémon will be healed. Even if you lose a battle, the Battle Test will continue until you've battled all five Trainers.



You can download opponents to battle!

Battle Test data will be distributed at Pokémon-related events, and you can download it and take the test. You can even enjoy distributed tests before finishing the main game.



Check the official site at www.pokemon.com for details.



See the results

Your results are calculated based on the number of Trainers you defeated, the number of your Pokémon your opponent defeated, etc. Your results are displayed as points and ranks.



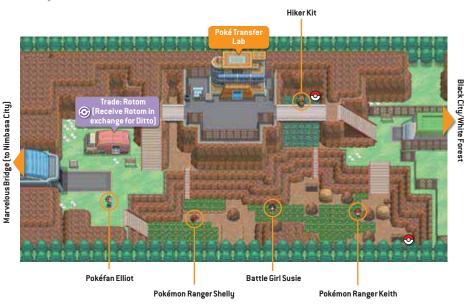
Route 15

Pokémon Training



Route 15 has bridges and stairs carved into a sheer cliff so people can come and go. On top of the cliff is the Poké Transfer Lab, a facility with a device for bringing over Pokémon from other regions.





First visit

TM09 Venoshock

Up-Grade

After defeating Pokémon
Ranger Shelly

Sitrus Berry

After defeating Pokémon
Ranger Keith

Sitrus Berry

Tall Grass	*******
Pokémon	
Fearow	0
Gligar	0
Kangaskhan	
Marowak	0
Pupitar	
Sawk	0
Throh 🗌	0

Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	\triangle
Gliscor	
Sawk	
Throh	
Tyranitar	Δ

O: Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Fearow	0
Gligar	\triangle
Kangaskhan	\triangle
Marowak	0
Pupitar	
Sawk	0
Throh	0
Watchog	\triangle

Step 1

Trade Pokémon with the person in the camper

Near the west entrance, you will see a woman in a parked camper. If you talk to her, she will trade you a Rotom for a Ditto. You can catch a Ditto in Giant Chasm, which you will visit later (p. 225). When you capture one, trade it for Rotom.



Take Rotom to the mall

Once you have a Rotom, put it in your party and take it to Shopping Mall Nine on Route 9. If you check the cardboard boxes in the warehouse on the first floor, you can change its form (p. 249).

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

•

Use Poké Transfer in the Poké Transfer Lab

In the Poké Transfer Lab, you can bring Pokémon over from Pokémon Diamond, Pearl, Platinum, HeartGold, and SoulSilver Versions using Poké Transfer. Bring over welltrained Pokémon to have them help you in your adventure.

Pokémon Training



Pokémon can't be returned

Pokémon brought over from a different region using Poké Transfer can't be returned to the region they came from. Also, you can't transfer Pokémon that know HMs.

Step 3 Use Strength to get items

On the east side of Route 15, you'll find two rocks that can be moved with Strength. If you push each of those rocks into the hole, you can get items. If you move them incorrectly, leave using the eastern gate and come right back. The rock will have moved back to where it started.



Get Berries by defeating Trainers

Defeat Pokémon Rangers Shelly and Keith in battle to get Sitrus Berries. Shelly and Keith are in the tall grass below the stairs. Be sure to battle them for their Berries.



Black City/White Forest

Once you've battled the Pokémon Trainers and gathered items, continue to the eastern end of the route. Pass through the gate to reach Black City in Pokémon Black Version (p. 208), or White Forest in Pokémon White Version (p. 210).





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



nges in the

Most areas in the Unova region are always sunny. In certain areas, however, the weather changes depending on the date and season.



CHANGES IN THE WEATHER

See the changes in weather that depend on the date and season.

The area along the mountains from Driftveil City to Icirrus City is prone to changes in the weather. In spring, summer, and autumn, it often rains, and in winter, snow and hail will fall. Depending on the date, it may also be sunny. When you visit the mountain areas, be sure to watch the weather.

Where the weather changes

Driftveil City

Rain, snow, or hail falls

Rain sometimes falls from spring to autumn in Driftveil City. When it's winter, sometimes you'll see snow or hail.



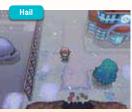


Mistralton City

Rain, snow, or hail falls

Rain often falls from spring to autumn in Mistralton City. When it's winter, the city sometimes gets snow or hail.

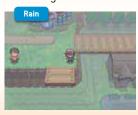




Icirrus City

Rain, snow, or blizzards

Rain often falls from spring to autumn in Icirrus City. During winter, everything is covered in snow, and there may even be blizzards.

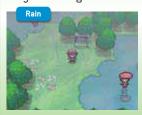




Route 8

In winter, the marshes ice over

Rain often falls from spring to autumn on Route 8. During winter, the marsh is covered in ice. Snow may fall during winter.





Some places change on your birthday

Routes 14 and 15 are always covered in mist. If you set your birthday in your Nintendo DS and visit on that day, the fog will clear and you can enjoy the beautiful scenery.

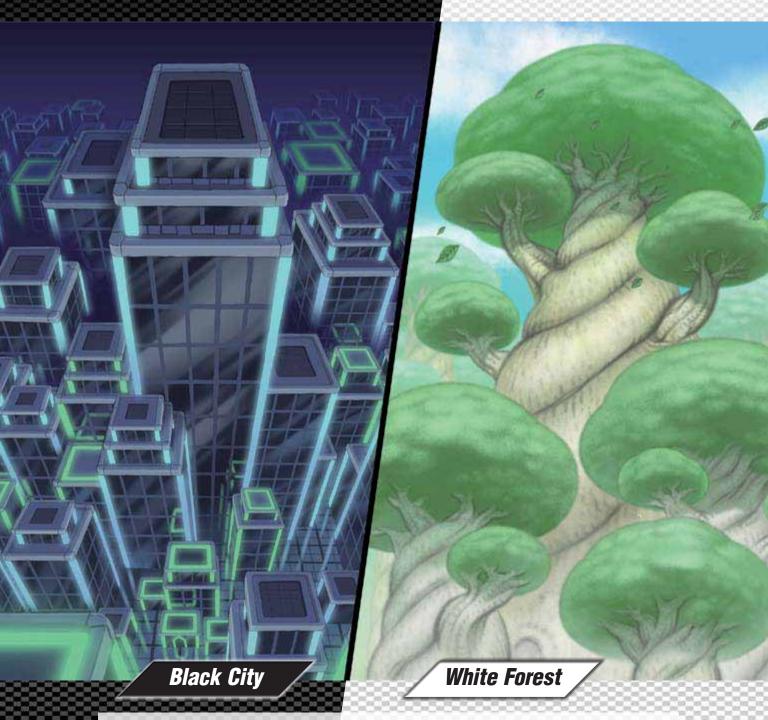






206





The population of Black City or White Forest, and how developed the place is, depends on how long it took you to reach it from when you started playing. The maps on p. 208 and p. 210 are one example of the city in its most

developed state. When you don't have many residents, join a friend and use the Entralink to visit each other's city and invite people to come live in your city to make it bigger.

List of Trainers

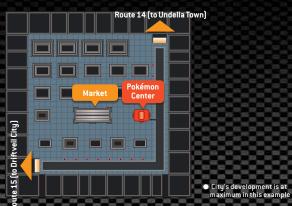
Pokémon Training



Black City is a sprawling metropolis that exists only in *Pokémon Black Version*. When the population increases, the buildings become bigger, and become smaller as the population decreases. When the city develops and the population increases, you can battle many different Trainers.



Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)	
BridgeMail M	50
Favored Mail	50
Greet Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50
Like Mail	50
Reply Mail	50
RSVP Mail	50
Thanks Mail	50



Residents and purchasable items

Resident	Item Sold	Price	Likelihood of Leaving
Grace	Dawn Stone	10,000	Very High
Lena	Sun Stone	10,000	Very High
Molly	Shiny Stone	10,000	Very High
Britney	Rare Bone	30,000	High
Collin	Yellow Shard	3,000	High
Emi	Fluffy Tail	15,000	High
Frederic	Luxury Ball	50,000	High
Gene	Big Mushroom	20,000	High
Jacques	Poké Doll	18,000	High
Karenna	Leaf Stone	10,000	High
Miki	Max Repel	5,500	High
Pierce	Poké Ball	10,000	High
Ralph	Water Stone	10,000	High
Shane	Berry Juice	1,500	High
Silvia	Pearl	6,000	High

	Resident	Item Sold	Price	Likelihood of Leaving
	Vincent	Fire Stone	10,000	High
	Carlos	Oval Stone	10,000	Low
	Dave	TinyMushroom	3,000	Low
	Doug	Red Shard	3,000	Low
	Eliza	Blue Shard	3,000	Low
	Ken	Thunderstone	10,000	Low
	Leo	Stardust	10,000	Low
	Lynette	Heart Scale	10,000	Low
	Marie	Green Shard	3,000	Low
	Miho	Big Pearl	38,000	Low
=	Piper	Star Piece	48,000	Low
	Robbie	Fresh Water	1,000	Low
	Ryder	Nugget	50,000	Low
	Herman	Dusk Stone	10,000	Very Low
	Rosa	Moon Stone	10,000	Very Low

Step 1

Black City develops

The number of people living here is determined by the number of days it took you to reach the city from starting *Pokémon Black Version*. The number of buildings also depends on the number of residents. The number of residents (see the list above) can be as few as zero and as many as ten





Low level of development



Bring people over with Entralink when your city is small

If you don't talk to the people living in Black City for awhile, they will disappear. Use the Entralink to visit another player's White Forest and bring people over to replace the residents who left. Depending on the number of people living in the city, how quickly a person leaves the city changes.

Pokémon Training



List of Trainers

Why can't you invite certain residents?

Sometimes you can't invite people to come live in your city even if you go to White Forest via the Entralink, This means either you already have ten people living in your Black City, or a person with the same name is already living in your city.



Buy many items at the market

The market has five counters and the number of people selling items will increase as the city's level of development increases. All of the items sold at the market are expensive, but sometimes valuable items related to evolution are sold. Here's your chance to pick up items such as the Oval Stone and the Sun Stone.



The items you can buy depend on the residents

The goods sold at the market change depending on the people living in the city. If the population goes up, you can buy more items. Invite people corresponding to the items you want.

Step <



Get a reward for battling Trainers

Talk to the boss in the market, and he will give you a reward for the number of residents you've defeated in Pokémon battles. If you talk to him after you defeat ten people, he will give you 10,000 in prize money. Keep battling and making more money for each time you defeat ten. There is, however, a limit to the number of people you can defeat.



Step 5



Head north to Route 14

Pass through the gate to the north once you've finished looking around the town. The gate goes to Route 14 (p. 212). Wild Pokémon and Pokémon Trainers are waiting to battle you, so heal your Pokémon and get any items you may need before continuing.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

List of Trainers

A place of nature's bounty, it attracts people who long for nature

White Forest

Pokémon White Version



White Forest is a verdant woodland that only exists in Pokémon White Version. As the number of residents increases, the forest becomes more lush. If the number decreases, the trees become smaller. As the forest grows, you will also see more tall grass, and hard-to-find Pokémon will appear.

F	eld	Mov	es N	eede	d	
Surf						

Poké Mart BridgeMail M 50 50 Favored Mail Greet Mail 50 Inquiry Mail 50 Like Mail 50 50 Reply Mail RSVP Mail 50 Thanks Mail 50

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



- Depending on the map, there may or may not be water surfaces.

Pokémon that appear with a resident

	Poké	émon	ltem Dropped	Likelihood
Resident	Grass	Water	item bropped	of Leaving
Frederic	Budew	Wooper	Honey	Very High
Herman	Porygon	Wooper	Dusk Stone	Very High
Rosa	Whismur	Lotad	Moon Stone	Very High
Carlos	Starly	Corphish	Oval Stone	High
Dave	Gastly	Surskit	TinyMushroom	High
Doug	Shinx	Lotad	Red Shard	High
Eliza	Trapinch	Lotad	Blue Shard	High
Grace	Bagon	Wooper	Dawn Stone	High
Ken	Nidoran ♂	Corphish	Thunderstone	High
Leo	Pidgey	Surskit	Stardust	High
Lynette	Oddish	Surskit	Heart Scale	High
Marie	Magnemite	Lotad	Green Shard	High
Miho	Seedot	Surskit	Ultra Ball	High
Piper	Bellsprout	Surskit	Nest Ball	High
Robbie	Elekid	Surskit	Great Ball	High

Resident	Pokemon		Item Dropped	Likelihood	
Nesidelit	Grass	Water		ofLeaving	
Ryder	Machop	Lotad	Quick Ball	High	
Britney	Норрір	Surskit	Rare Bone	Low	
Collin	Abra	Lotad	Yellow Shard	Low	
Emi	Happiny	Corphish	Timer Ball	Low	
Gene	Aron	Surskit	Big Mushroom	Low	
Jacques	Nidoran ♀	Lotad	Dive Ball	Low	
Karenna	Slakoth	Lotad	Leaf Stone	Low	
Miki	Togepi	Surskit	Repeat Ball	Low	
Pierce	Mareep	Surskit	Poké Ball	Low	
Ralph	Lotad	Surskit	Water Stone	Low	
Shane	Rhyhorn	Surskit	Net Ball	Low	
Silvia	Wurmple	Surskit	Poké Ball	Low	
Vincent	Magby	Corphish	Fire Stone	Low	
Lena	Ralts	Wooper	Sun Stone	Very Low	
Molly	Azurill	Lotad	Shiny Stone	Very Low	

Step 1 White Forest grows larger

The number of people living here is determined by the number of days it took you to reach this forest from starting Pokémon White Version. The amount of tall grass or water varies depending on the number of residents. The number of residents can be as few as zero and as many as ten.







Bring people over with Entralink when the forest is

If you don't talk to the people living in White Forest for awhile, they will disappear. Use the Entralink to visit another player's Black City and bring people over to replace the residents who left. How quickly a person leaves depends on how many people are living in the forest.

Pokémon Training



people can just be thenselves.

Why can't you invite certain residents?

Sometimes you can't invite people to come live in your forest even if you go to Black City via the Entralink. This means either you already have ten people living in your White Forest or a person with the same name is already living in your forest.

Get Berries by showing Pokémon

Show the mayor the Pokémon he wants to see and you'll receive one of the following Berries a day: Pecha Berry, Bluk Berry, Lum Berry, Chesto Berry, or Leppa Berry. The Pokémon the mayor wants to see changes daily. Talk to him once each day and get Berries.



Catch Pokémon from other regions

Wild Pokémon can be found in the tall grass or on the water. The Pokémon that appear here are from other regions. They are all Lv. 5 and don't appear in other areas. Different Pokémon appear depending on who is living in your White Forest, Talk to the residents of the forest, and they will tell you which kinds of Pokémon you will meet in the tall grass.



Pick up dropped items

Sometimes people drop items in White Forest. The types of items vary according to the people living there. They are not always dropped, and the number of items and places where they're dropped differ from day to day.

Step 5



Head north to Route 14

Pass through the gate to the north once you've finished looking around the town. The gate goes to Route 14 (p. 212). Wild Pokémon and Pokémon Trainers are waiting to battle you, so heal your Pokémon and get any items you may need before continuing.





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Route 14

Pokémon Training



A majestic river with waterfalls flows from west to east in Route 14. The Abundant Shrine is to the west, and the route continues to Undella Town in the north. The spray from the river's water turns into mist, so the entire road is often enveloped in fog.







Junko

Step <

Use HMs to continue

Route 14 is bisected by a large river, and there are waterfalls due to the many hills. To see everything, you need the HMs Surf and Waterfall. Put a Pokémon in your party that knows these moves and look at every corner of the route.



Fog makes it hard to see

Route 14 is often enveloped in a thick fog. A white haze covers everything so it's hard to see what's around you. Be careful not to overlook any items and check every corner as you go through the route.



Search for Giallo of the Seven Sages

If you use Waterfall to climb the river to the west, you will find Giallo of the Seven Sages on a plateau. After Giallo tells you about N and the Legendary Dragon-type Pokémon, he gives you HM08 Bulk Up. After that, he is arrested by Looker (p. 233).



Pokémon Training







Fisherman Sid

Tall Grass	·:::::
Pokémon	
Altaria	
Beheeyem	\triangle
Drifblim	\triangle
Golduck	0
Jigglypuff	0
Mienfoo	\triangle
Shuckle	
Tropius	
Tall Grass (rustling)	

: Iall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	
Wigglytuff	

Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Altaria	Δ
Beheeyem	Δ
Drifblim	Δ
Golduck	0
Jigglypuff	0
Mienshao	Δ
Shuckle	Δ
Tropius	0



Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)

Basculin (Red-Striped Form)

Seaking

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

0

Step 3

A passage to the Abundant Shrine

Continue west from where Giallo was, then use Surf and go down the waterfall. When you land on the west side, you will find the entrance to the Abundant Shrine at the dead end. Go inside and have a look around the Abundant Shrine (p. 214).



Step 4

Head north to Undella Town

When you return to Route 14 from the Abundant Shrine, continue east. Go north when you can't go any further east, and after you cross the bridge with the Fisherman, you will be in Undella Town. Use Surf to cross the ocean and enter Undella Town (p. 216).



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

ABUNDANT SHRINE (*)

People once lived in this village, and it still feels the same as it did then

Abundant Shrine



The Abundant Shrine is a place where people used to live—if you look closely, you can still see remnants from that time. There is a small shrine at the north end of this area, and legend has it that a Pokémon called Landorus protects this land.





Route 14 (to Black City/White Forest)

Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Bronzong	Δ
Chimecho	0
Cottonee	Δ
Misdreavus	Δ
Murkrow	
Noctowl	
Petilil .	
Stantler	Δ
Vulpix	0

valpix	
	•
Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	\triangle
Honchkrow	\triangle
Lilligant	\triangle
Mismagius 🗆	
Ninetales	\triangle
Whimsicott	\triangle

O: Dark Grass	******
Pokémon	
Bronzong	Δ
Chimecho	0
Cottonee	Δ
Misdreavus 🗌	Δ
Murkrow	Δ
Noctowl	
Petilil 🗌	Δ
Stantler	Δ
Vulpix	0

⊘ Items	
☐ Hyper Potion	
Rare Candy	
Razor Fang	
☐ TM35 Flamethrower	
☐ TM92 Trick Room	

○ Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Slowpoke	0
Water Surface (ripples)	·····
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Slowbro	\triangle
Slowking	\triangle
Slowpoke	0

Fishing	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Goldeen	0
Fishing (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Goldeen	0
Goldeen	_
Seaking	Δ

Abundant Shrine

Continue north and find the shrine

Head north to the shrine. If you've caught Tornadus (Thundurus), continue to the shrine at the northern end of the area and you will find some kids arguing about Landorus.

Pokémon Training



This used to be a village

Abundant Shrine used to be a village where people lived, and the fields are exactly as they were at the time. It must have been a village with fruitful fields spreading throughout the entire place.

Step 2

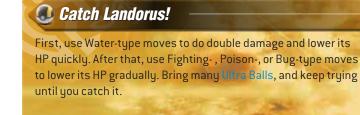
Bring Tornadus and Thundurus

Landorus is the Pokémon that punished Tornadus and Thundurus when they were flying about the Unova region wrecking homes and fields. When you approach the shrine with both Tornadus and Thundurus, Landorus will appear.



Cooperate with friends and family

In Pokémon Black Version,
Tornadus appears, and in
Pokémon White Version,
Thundurus appears. To meet
Landorus, you have to exchange
with your friends and family.
Lend Tornadus and Thundurus to
each other so you can all meet
Landorus.





Step 3

Return to Route 14 and continue your journey

Battle Pokémon Trainers and gather items, having a look around as you do. While surfing, you can catch Slowpoke, Slowbro, and Slowking, which can only be encountered here. After you've had a good look around, return to Route 14 (p. 213).





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

summer retreat with a beach full of people who enjoy summer vacations

Undella Town

Pokémon Training



Undella Town is an elegant place to beat the heat, and many manors line the beach. During summer, lots of people visit on vacation. A large villa sits at the western edge of town. It's visited by members of the very wealthy family known as The Riches.

Route 13 (to Lacunosa Town)

(Items	
☐ Big Nugget ☐ HM06 Dive ☐ Prism Scale	

Poké Mart (Lower Clerk)	
Favored Mail	50
Greet Mail	50
Inquiry Mail	50
Like Mail	50
Reply Mail	50
RSVP Mail	50
Thanks Mail	50
Dive Ball	1,000
Luxury Ball	1,000



The Riches' Draco

Route 14 (to Black City/White Forest)



_	
Water Surface (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Corsola	0
Mantine	\triangle
Wailmer	0

Fishing		Ņ
Pokémon		
Luvdisc		
Remoraid	0	
Shellder	0	
	•	
Fishing (ripples)		Ķ

Fishing (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Cloyster	
Luvdisc	0
Octillery	
Shellder	0

Items the billionaire in the large villa will buy

Item	Price
Blue Flute	7,000
Red Flute	7,500
Yellow Flute	7,500
Black Flute	8,000
White Flute	8,000

Item	Price
Relic Band	???
Relic Copper	???
Relic Crown	???
Relic Gold	???
Relic Silver	???
Relic Statue	???
Relic Vase	???



Get HM06 Dive from a girl

Talk to the girl on the plateau to the west of the Pokémon Center, and get HM06 Dive. If you use this where the water is dark, you can dive underwater. You can find areas of dark water in Undella Bay to the east of Undella Town, so try using it there.



A trade that can only happen during summer

During summer, a man comes to the manor to the east of the large villa. If you give him a Cinccino, he'll give you a Munchlax. The man only visits during summer, so once the summer is gone, so



Meet the Sinnoh region's Champion, Cynthia

You can meet the Sinnoh region's Champion, Cynthia, in the manor west of the Pokémon Center. The first time you meet her, you can enjoy a Pokémon battle with her regardless of the season. After that, you can only battle her during spring once a day. If you meet her in spring, challenge her every day.



The Gym Leaders come to play

The female Gym Leaders and Elite Four members come to hang out in the villa where Cynthia stays. If you talk to the Elite Four's Caitlin, you will learn it's her villa.



Step <

A Pokémon battle with The

Talk to The Riches' Draco in front of the big mansion, and he will challenge you to a Pokémon battle. If you talk to him again on another day in the large villa, the number of people you can battle will increase every time, up to six. When you defeat Miles, the head of the family, the challenge is over.



Use the Amulet Coin when you battle

The Riches are wealthy, as you might expect, so you win a lot of prize money for defeating them in battle. Have the first Pokémon in your party hold an Amulet Coin and you'll end up with a ton of cash!



Sell your rare items to this

The billionaire in the west room of the large villa buys rare items from you. He will buy the flutes you get from the sunglasses-wearing man on Route 13 and the ancient items you get from somewhere. After you get these items, talk to the billionaire.



Step 5 Head east to Undella Bay

Have a look around town, then continue east over the water to Undella Bay (p. 218). Undella Bay is a small bay surrounded by rocks, and rumors abound that mysterious ruins lie on the seafloor. Pokémon Trainer battles also wait, so heal your Pokémon before you head out.



Teach Dive to your Pokémon

There are a few places in Undella Bay where you can dive to the seafloor. Put a Pokémon that can learn Dive in your party, and use the HM to teach it the move.

Step 6

Head north to Route 13

When you return from Undella Bay, go through the gate to the left of the Pokémon Center to Route 13 (p. 221). Route 13 is packed with Pokémon Trainers, so make sure to take lots of healing items with you.

Pokémon Training



List of Trainers



A world-famous sea of shining waves

Undella Bay • Abyssal Ruins

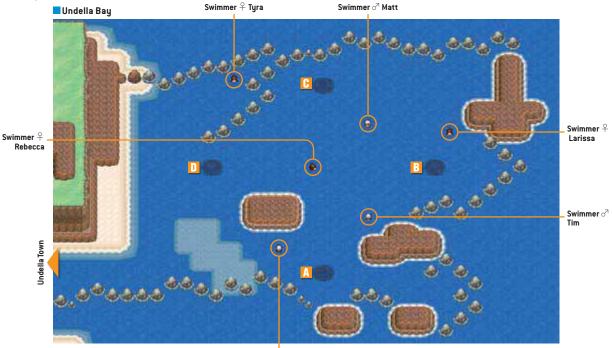


Visitors to Undella Town come to swim in beautiful Undella Bay. It's surrounded by rocks and small islands, so the area you can swim in is small—but if you explore below the surface, you'll find the mysterious Abyssal Ruins spread out over the seafloor.

Field Moves Needed

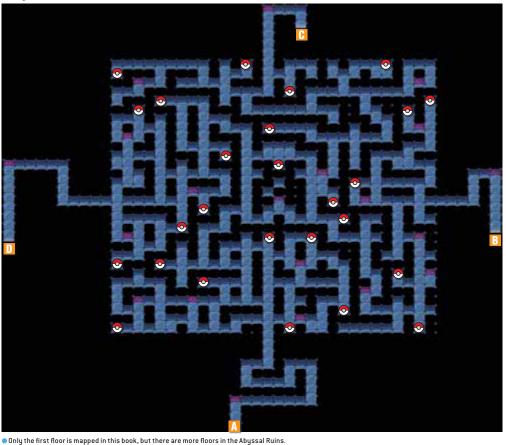
0

h**ing** (ripples)



Swimmer ♂ Bart

Spring Summer Autumn		Winter		All Seasons
Water Surface		Water Surface		• Fishing
Pokémon		Pokémon		Pokémon
Mantyke	0	Pelipper	\triangle	Luvdisc
Pelipper	\triangle	Spheal		Remoraid
Wingull	0	Wingull		Shellder
Water Surface (ripples)		Water Surface (ripples)		Fishing (
Pokémon		Pokémon		Pokémon
Mantine	\triangle	Sealeo	0	Cloyster
Wailmer	0	Wailmer	0	Luvdisc
Wailord	\triangle	Wailord	\triangle	Octillery
		Walrein	\triangle	Shellder



The items you get here will be a surprise. Solve the mystery on your own, and find the way through the maze.

Step

Battle Trainers swimming in the water

Six Trainers are swimming in Undella Bay. Battle with them as you surf around. All of the Swimmers will use Water-type Pokémon against you.



Cynthia, the secret swimmer

In Undella Bay, Swimmer ♀ Tyra tells you a rumor that Cynthia likes to go swimming when no one is around. Maybe she's shy about her bathing suit.



Use Dive to explore underwater

Press the A Button when you're in a patch of darker water, and you can go underwater with Dive. While underwater, continue to press the Control Pad, and you can enter the building on the seafloor. If you release the Control Pad, you will be returned to the surface.



Get Dive in Undella Town

You need the HM Dive to go to the Abyssal Ruins. If you don't have it yet, talk to the woman in front of Cynthia's villa in Undella Town (p. 216).



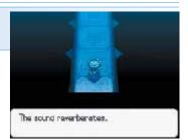
UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

O UNDELLA BAY • ABYSSAL RUINS

The Abyssal Ruins are a giant

When you enter the Abyssal Ruins, you'll hear the sound of a switch being pushed. If you travel a certain number of steps from this point, you'll automatically return to the water's surface. In other words, the time you have to search through the Abyssal Ruins is limited.

Pokémon Training



Step 4

Mysterious letters are carved in the stones

Purple stones are set in various places in the Abyssal Ruins. Check these stones, and you will see they are covered in mysterious letters. These letters have not been deciphered. What could be written here?



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

UNDELLA BAY • ABYSSAL RUINS (*)



Proceed while collecting items

Many items have been dropped in the first floor of the Abyssal Ruins. The inside is a maze, however, and it's easy to lose track of where you are. Refer to the map on p. 219 and pick up every item.



How do you use the items you find here?

The items found in the Abyssal Ruins can be roughly divided into two types: Items that are useful in battle, and items you can sell for a lot of money. After you get them, think about how to use them.



Go in through all four entrances

The Abyssal Ruins has four entrances, and although you can see everything from each entrance, you can't explore the whole place in a single trip because of the time limit. If you're sent back to the surface, try a different entrance on your next dive.





The Abyssal Ruins might hide a secret

The Abyssal Ruins still hide many mysteries. By solving these mysteries, you might be able to get to the other floors. See if you can unlock the mystery by yourself and try to make the entire image of the Abyssal Ruins clear.





Return to Undella Town when you're finished exploring

Undella Bay is surrounded by rocks and small islands, so the only exit is back to Undella Town. When you're done exploring Undella Bay and the Abyssal Ruins, return to Undella Town to go to Route 13 (p. 218).





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

This seaside route is famous for sand bars that cross the ocean

Route 13



Route 13 is a picture que route lined with ocean beaches and trees. You'll meet a person who will give you a precious item every day, and a person who can teach your Pokémon an ultimate move.





Items you can get from the man in sunglasses

· ,		•	90.	
	ltei	n		
Big Pearl				
Black Flute				
Blue Flute				
DeepSeaScale				
${\sf DeepSeaTooth}$				
Dragon Scale				
Dubious Disc				
Electirizer				
Heart Scale				
King's Rock				
Lucky Egg				
Lucky Punch				
Magmarizer				
Metal Coat				

e man in sunglasses				
ltem				
Metal Powder				
Protector				
Razor Claw				
Razor Fang				
Reaper Cloth				
Red Flute				
Shoal Salt				
Shoal Shell				
Stick				
Thick Club				
Up-Grade				
White Flute				
Yellow Flute				

Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Absol	
Drifblim	
Golbat	0
Lunatone	\triangle
Solrock	
Swellow	
Tangela	0

Socialite Marian

Tall Grass (rustling)	
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	
Crobat	
Tangrowth	Δ

O Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Absol	Δ
Drifblim	Δ
Golbat	0
Lunatone	Δ
Solrock	Δ
Swellow	0
Tangela	0

Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Pelipper	\triangle
Staryu	0
Wingull	0

Water Surface (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Corsola	0
Starmie	\triangle
Staryu	0

0
0

Fishing (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Cloyster	
Kingler	
Luvdisc	0
Shellder	0

Step 1

Go north while battling Trainers

When you go on Route 13, follow the road west. Continue while battling Pokémon Trainers and you will reach a plateau. Climb the stairs and use Strength to move a rock out of the way and get items. When you're done, go north on the beach.

Pokémon Training



Find Items with the Dowsing MCHN

Many items are hidden in the beaches that span Route 13. Use the Dowsing MCHN to find them.

Step 2

Get precious items from the man in sunglasses

At the fork in the road, go west. Talk to the man in sunglasses along the way, and you can get a different item every day. The items you get are valuable items you can't obtain anywhere else. Come by every day and get items (p. 221).



The Prism Scale is related to evolution

On the north side of Route 13, you can get a Prism Scale. This item is related to the evolution of a Pokémon that lives in a different region (p. 252).



Learn the ultimate move from the Move Tutor

Keep going west past the man in sunglasses, and you'll reach the ultimate Move Tutor's house. Talk to the old man inside, and he will teach Serperior, Emboar, or Samurott the ultimate move—but only if you have a very strong bond with your Pokémon.



Unova Pokémon that can learn the ultimate moves

Move	Туре	Effect	Pokémon that can learn it
Frenzy Plant	Grass	A move with a power of 150. The user can't move during the next turn.	Serperior
Hydro Cannon	Water	A move with a power of 150. The user can't move during the next turn.	Samurott
Blast Burn	Fire	A move with a power of 150. The user can't move during the next turn. If the target is Frozen, it will be thawed.	Emboar





UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Grams

Route 13

Step 4

Help Wingull by finding the dropped Grams

Go north on the beach, and climb the stairs up to the high area. A girl with a Wingull is on a bridge to the south. Talk to the girl, and she will tell you that Wingull is in trouble because it dropped the Grams it was going to deliver. Collect all of the Grams that Wingull dropped.

Pokémon Training





Give the three Grams to Wingull

Gram 2 is just south of that bridge. Get Gram 1 from the old man to the east when you go down to the beach, and Gram 3 from the Parasol Lady to the south. Give them all to Wingull, and you'll get TM89 U-turn as thanks.





The Giant Chasm is just past the stairs.

Go north over the water from the old man who gave you Gram 1. The Giant Chasm is just past the stairs (p. 225). Before going any further, however, head west toward Lacunosa Town. If you use Strength to push the boulder, it will be easy to get there and back.



Push the boulder with Strength

If you push the boulder aside with Strength as you pass, it will be easier to reach the Giant Chasm from Lacunosa Town. Push the boulder into the hole to create a shortcut.



Go west to Lacunosa Town

Your Pokémon are probably tired from all the battling on Route 13. Before going to the Giant Chasm, it would be best to heal them. Head west to Lacunosa Town (p. 224).





A town where all honor old customs, living as methodically as clockwork

Lacunosa Town

Pokémon Training



Lacunosa Town is a tiny town with little more than a Pokémon Center. The people who live here believe in a legend that a monster attacks at night, so they stay indoors after dark.



Items When you talk to the woman when Shaymin is in your party ☐ Gracidea

Poké Mart BridgeMail V 50 Favored Mail 50 Greet Mail 50 Inquiry Mail 50 Like Mail 50 Reply Mail 50 RSVP Mail 50 Thanks Mail 50

Route 12 (to Opelucid City)

-LACUNOSA TOWN

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Step <

Learn about the Gracidea from the woman

Talk to the woman in the Pokémon Center, and she will tell you about the Gracidea. If Shaymin is in your party, and you don't have the Gracidea yet, she will give it to you. This item can change Shaymin's Forme (p. 250).



Route 13 (to Undella Town)



Gracidea



Listen to the old woman's folktale

Talk to an old woman in front of a house in the north of town and she will tell you about the town's folktale, which influences their customs. If you talk to the old woman in her house at night, she will talk to you...but she's halfasleep, and it's hard to understand what she's saying.



How to bring Shaymin over

If you've already received Shaymin in another Pokémon game, you can go to the Poké Transfer Lab on Route 15 and bring it to this game via Poké Transfer.

Step

Go to the Giant Chasm

Pokémon Training

Heal your Pokémon in the Pokémon Center, and once you're ready, head to the Giant Chasm. If you used Strength to push the rock, you can reach it by heading east from the



The difference between day and night

The people of the town still follow old customs, so they all stay inside all night (p. 49). If you walk around town at night, you'll find that the streets are empty.



Head west towards Route 12

When you return from the Giant Chasm, first rest your Pokémon at the Pokémon Center. After that, head west from the town, and go to Route 12 (p. 228). Route 12 is a short route that connects Lacunosa Town and Village



Get Berries on Sunday nights

Go into a house in the north of the city on Sundays, anytime at night, and you'll meet a Clerk \checkmark . Talk to him, and he will give you a Pecha Berry, Bluk Berry, Lum Berry, or Leppa Berry. You can visit him every Sunday to get a Berry.



egend says if you approach this big chasm, disasters surely follow.

Giant Chasm



The Giant Chasm is a crater-shaped cave, with a verdant forest covering the floor of the crater. The deepest part is where the Legendary Pokémon Kyurem lives. The residents of Lacunosa Town fear that it is a monster and avoid it.

Cave









UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

LACUNOSA TOWN • GIANT CHASM

Entrance Tall Grass

Pokémon	
Absol	Δ
Drifblim	Δ
Golbat	0
Lunatone	Δ
Solrock	Δ
Swellow	0
Tangela	0



HEAT OF A	THE REAL PROPERTY.
Walter Property	
A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	1000
200 ea	All Parks
(B) (B) (B)	- eeelle
A THE RESIDENCE AND IN	
Route 1	3 (to Undella Town)

■ Entrance



Tall Grass (Rustling Grass)		
Pokémon		
Audino	0	
Crobat	Δ	
Emolga	Δ	
Tangrowth	Δ	

O: Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Absol	
Drifblim	Δ
Golbat	0
Lunatone	\triangle
Solrock	
Swellow	0
Tangela	0



Cave/Cave's deepest part			
© Cave			
Pokémon			
Boldore	\triangle		
Delibird	\triangle		
Golbat	0		
Jynx	\triangle		
Lunatone	\triangle		
Piloswine	0		
Sneasel	\triangle		
Solrock	Δ		

Pokémon Excadrill . Water Surface	0
	0
Water Surface	~
Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Seel	0

Water Surface (ripples)	······································
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Dewgong	\triangle
Seel	0
• Fishing	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Poliwag	0

Poliwhirl

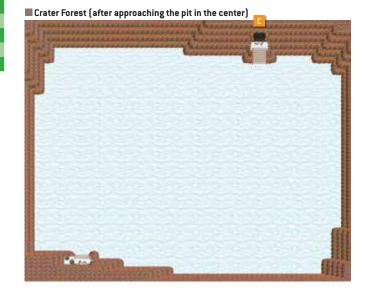
Fishing (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Poliwhirl	0
Poliwrath	



Dark Grass	111000
Pokémon	::::::>
Clefairy	0
Ditto	0
Lunatone	Δ
Metang	Δ
Piloswine	0
Solrock	Δ
	•







UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Not a Trainer in sight

Collect items Step

Enter the cave and go around the walls while collecting items. Once you've made a lap, go north and you will reach the Crater Forest. The trees and ledges make it hard to move around freely. The easiest way to get around is to go clockwise and collect items.



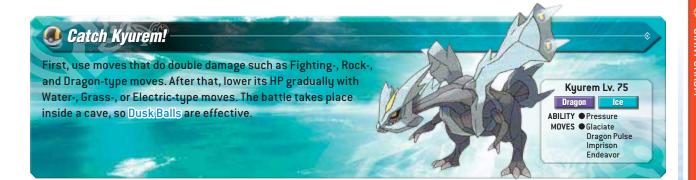
Approach the pit, and everything is covered by snow

When you approach the pit in the center of the Crater Forest, a Pokémon cry sounds out of nowhere, and in an instant, everything is covered with snow. The snow covers up all the trees and other obstacles so you can proceed directly to the deepest part of the cave. When you go inside, Kyurem is waiting for you in the cave's center.



Leave Ditto at the Day Care

When you leave two Pokémon at the Pokémon Day Care on Route 3, an Egg will sometimes be found. If one of those two Pokémon is Ditto, you will find Eggs with many combinations of Pokémon.



Use a shortcut to return to Lacunosa Town

Return to the Crater Forest from the deepest chamber, and climb down the ledges while heading south to the exit. In the cave, climb the stairs and go south. Hop down the ledge for a shortcut to the exit. Once you've left the Giant Chasm, return to Lacunosa Town (p. 225).



Catch Kyurem and the snow disappears

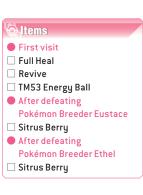
The moment you approach the pit in the center of Crater Forest, everything becomes covered in snow. After you catch Kyurem, however, the snow disappears entirely. If you missed any items on the way to the pit, you can pick them up on the way out.



UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Route 12 is a short route with gentle hills and large expanses of tall grass. Go east to reach Lacunosa Town. The western exit goes to Village Bridge. Many Bug-type Pokémon live in the tall grass.



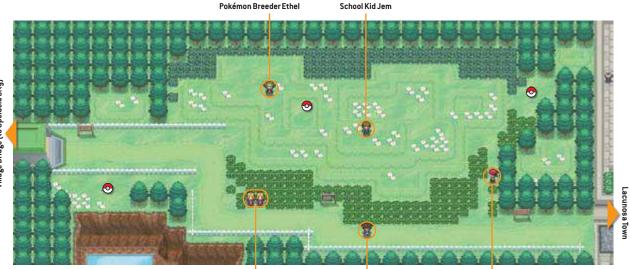
⊙:Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Cherrim	Δ
Combee	0
Dunsparce	Δ
Heracross	Δ
Kakuna	Δ
Metapod 🗆	Δ
Pinsir	Δ
Rapidash	Δ
Sunkern	0
Tranquill	0

© ^
0
\wedge
Δ
Δ
Δ
Δ
Δ

O Dark Grass	•••••
	:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::
Pokémon	
Cherrim	\triangle
Combee	0
Dunsparce	\triangle
Heracross	\triangle
Kakuna	\triangle
Metapod 🗆	\triangle
Pinsir	\triangle
Rapidash	\triangle
Sunkern	0
Tranquill	0

Village Bridge (to Opelucid City)

UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



Backers Fey & Sue

School Kid Ann

Pokémon Breeder Eustace

Step

Go west while battling Trainers

Even though it's short, six Pokémon Trainers are waiting for you on Route 12. Battle with them, gather items, and catch Pokémon in the tall grass. On the other side of the gate to the west is Village Bridge.



Get Berries by defeating Breeders

Pokémon Breeders Eustace and Ethel give you Sitrus Berries after you defeat them in battle. Eustace is next to the east gate, and Ethel is on the west side. Be sure to challenge them and get the Berries.



An old bridge that settlers of the Unova region built and now live on

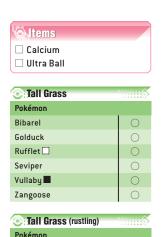
Village Bridge

Pokémon Training



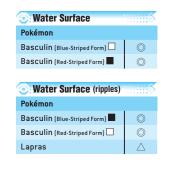
Village Bridge is a bridge with houses on top, as the name implies. The bridge has a long history—it's said to have been built while the Unova region was being developed 200 years ago.

F	ield	Mov	es No	eede	d	
Surf	1					



Audino Emolga









UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH



/_____



A part-time job at the Village Bridge Restaurant

Village Bridge Restaurant is housed in a camper below the east side of the bridge. If you defeat Baker Chris, you can work here part-time. Talk to Chris and listen to the customers' orders. Tell Chris the orders and give each customer the correct sandwich, and you get a Lum Berry as a reward.

Pokémon Training



Heal your Pokémon in the house

Talk to the girl in the house to the east and she will heal your Pokémon. There's no Pokémon Center here, so let this girl take care of your Pokémon after battling.



Talk to the woman with four Patrat

A woman and four Patrat live in the second house from the east. Talk to the woman, and she explains she is aiming for new heights, and she will depart with her Patrat. Now you can see the Patrat Show on Marvelous Bridge (p. 202).



Find Leftovers

Use the Dowsing MCHN around Village Bridge and you can find Leftovers. When a Pokémon holds Leftovers, it recovers a little HP at the end of every turn. Check every corner to find it.



Show the Fisherman Pokémon you've caught

A Fisherman lives in the third house from the east. If you talk to him, he invites you to join the Hip Waders. Select "Yes" to become a member. If you join and show him the Pokémon he wants to see, he will give you a Dive Ball.



Village Bridge has a storied history

A stonecutter lives in the westernmost house. By talking to him, you learn that Village Bridge was built during his great-greatgreat-grandfather's time. That was a long time ago.



Head west toward Route 11

Look at everything around Village Bridge and then go west. You'll find the start of Route 11 on the other side of the western gate. Travel along Route 11 to the west, and you will return to Opelucid City.



Talk to the musicians and make the music richer

Four musicians play on and around Village Bridge. Talk to them and they will add their instrument to the music. Enjoy a unique song with vocals.









•Guitar •Flute •Drums •Vocals

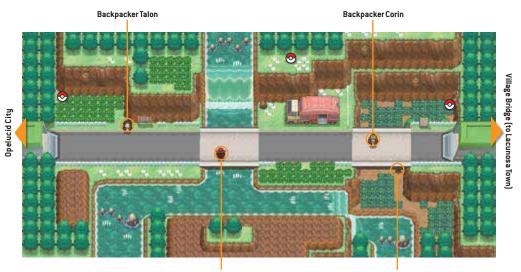
UNOVA ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH

Pokémon Training

Route 11

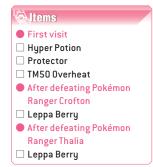


Route 11 crosses over a flowing river with a giant waterfall. A camper is parked next to the waterfall. You can battle Pokémon Trainers who came from abroad and are here to marvel at the striking natural scenery.



Pokémon Ranger Thalia

Pokémon Ranger Crofton



Tall Grass	
Pokémon	
Amoonguss	
Gligar	0
Golduck	0
Karrablast	
Pawniard	
Rufflet 🗌	0
Seviper	Δ
Vullaby 	0
Zangoose	Δ

Tall Grass (rustling)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Pokémon	
Audino	0
Emolga	
Gliscor	

Dark Grass	
Pokémon	
Amoonguss	Δ
Bisharp	Δ
Braviary 🗆	0
Gligar	0
Golduck	0
Karrablast	Δ
Mandibuzz	0
Seviper	Δ
Zangoose	Δ

Water Surface	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Buizel	0

Water Surface (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Buizel	0
Floatzel	Δ
Fishing	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Goldeen	0
Fishing (ripples)	
Pokémon	
Basculin (Blue-Striped Form)	0
Basculin (Red-Striped Form)	0
Goldeen	



Go west while battling Trainers

Go west while battling Pokémon Trainers. When you pass through the gate, you're in Opelucid City. Now, you've seen the whole Unova region! Check out the areas you've already seen, and aim for the Pokémon League (p. 196).



Get Berries by defeating Trainers

Seaking

Defeat Pokémon Rangers Crofton and Thalia to get Leppa Berries. Crofton is in the tall grass below the paved road, and Thalia is on the road. Make sure to fight them, and gather Berries.

 \triangle

⊗ Your Adventure after the Hall of Fame

The adventure continues even after seeing the credits twice

Pokémon Training

When you defeat the Elite Four and the Champion at the Pokémon League, the story comes to a close for a second time. After that, the goal of your adventure becomes completing the Pokédex. First, complete the Unova Pokédex, and then set off on another journey with the big dream of completing the National Pokédex.





Nuvema Town

Have a Pokémon battle with Bianca on the weekend

When you enter the Hall of Fame, you will return to your room in Nuvema Town. Talk to Bianca in the Pokémon Lab, and you can hear about mass outbreaks of Pokémon. After that, you can enjoy Pokémon battles with Bianca every Saturday and Sunday.



New wallpaper is added

After you enter the Hall of Fame, check your PC. You will find new wallpaper for your Pokémon Box, such as the Munna and Zoroark designs.





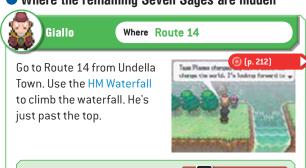
Search for the Remaining Seven Sages



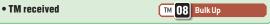
Stop Team Plasma by having Looker arrest the remaining Seven Sages

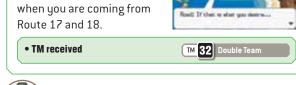
After you finish the main story, you may want to set off to defeat the Champion and enter the Hall of Fame, but there is something you should do first. Cooperate with Looker from the International Police and look for the remaining members of the Seven Sages (except for Ghetsis). Their locations are listed here.

Where the remaining Seven Sages are hidden





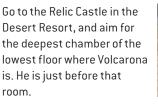




Where The Relic Castle

Where Chargestone Cave





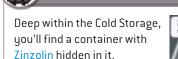
Rvoku



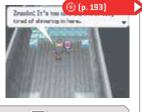


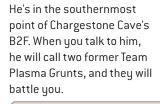
Where The Cold Storage



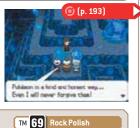


Zinzolin





Bronius



 TM received TM 01 Hone Claws TM received

Capture all of the Seven Sages to hear about N

There is no particular order to finding the Seven Sages. When Looker captures the sixth sage, he thanks you by telling you that he heard an eyewitness report of a person who matched N's description with a dragon Pokémon somewhere far away.







Backatthe Trainers in the Unova

Make your Pokémon stronger by battling all of the Trainers

In every part of the Unova region, Pokémon Trainers are waiting to challenge you to battle. Here, we've organized all of the Pokémon Trainers by where they appear. When you defeat a Trainer, sometimes you'll get items or Gym Badges. This also shows which Trainers will heal your Pokémon after you defeat them.





Pokémon Training



























































































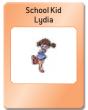
















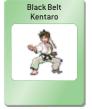










































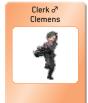




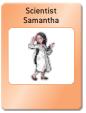






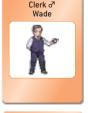




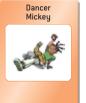


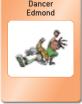


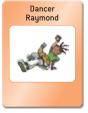




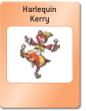




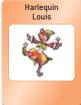


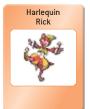
































































































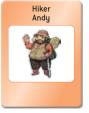






BADGE

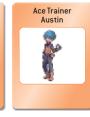
















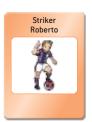


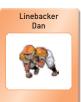




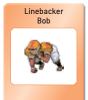




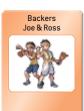








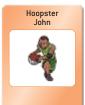




































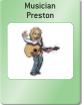
















































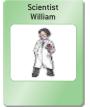






















































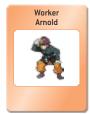






































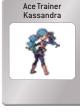


















































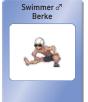




























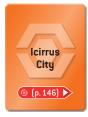






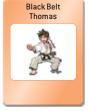
















































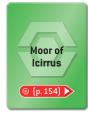


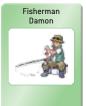










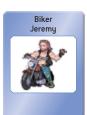










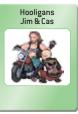












































































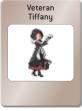














































After Finishing

the

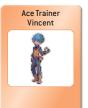
Main Story















































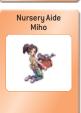






















































































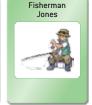




















































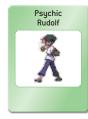


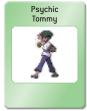


















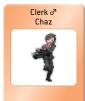












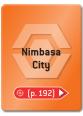






















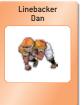


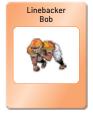




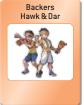


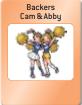








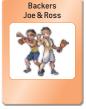




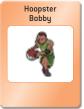


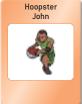






























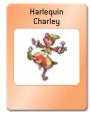












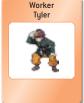


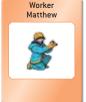








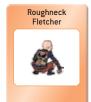




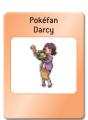


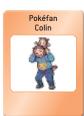


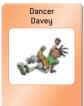














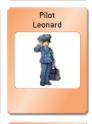






Max Revive

































































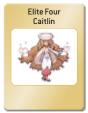




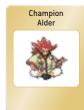


















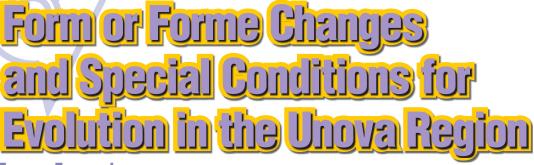












Form or Forme changes

Pokémon Training

In the Unova region, how do Pokémon like Giratina and Shaymin change Forme? What about Pokémon with special evolutions, like Magnezone and Milotic? This section shines a light on those mysteries. It should help you with Pokémon battles or completing your Pokédex.

Deerling/Sawsbuck

Changes its form depending on the season

Deerling and Sawsbuck change their form depending on the season in the Unova region. Deerling's fur changes color, and Sawsbuck's horns change dramatically. The Unova region's season changes every month in real-world time. For example, March is autumn, April is winter, May is spring, and June is summer. You can see all of Sawsbuck's fantastic form changes over four months.

Deerling's Seasonal Changes



Deerling (Spring Form)



Deerling (Summer Form)



Deerling (Autumn Form)



Deerling (Winter Form)

Sawsbuck's Seasonal Changes



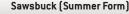
Sawsbuck (Spring Form)



Sawsbuck (Autumn Form)



Sawsbuck (Winter Form)





Darmanitan

When half its HP is lost, it changes form

A Darmanitan with the Hidden Ability called Zen Mode can change its form during battle. If its HP falls to half or less than half during a battle, it will automatically change into Zen Mode at the end of the turn. This change only happens during battle—once the battle is over, Darmanitan goes back to Standard Mode.

Pokémon Training



Darmanitan's Form Changes



Standard Mode







Rotom

Check the cardboard boxes in Shopping Mall Nine

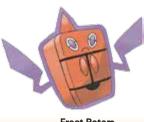
Rotom has several alternate forms, all with different types: Heat Rotom, Wash Rotom, Frost Rotom, Fan Rotom, and Mow Rotom. To change its form, go through the door on the first floor of Shopping Mall Nine and check the cardboard boxes while Rotom is in your party. The boxes hold appliances that can change Rotom's form.

















Giratina

Give Giratina the Griseous Orb to change it into Origin Forme

Giratina is normally in its Altered
Forme. When you have it hold
the Griseous Orb, it changes
into Origin Forme. You'll get the
Griseous Orb from the Shadow
Triad on the Marvelous Bridge.





Giratina (Altered Forme)



Shaymin

Use the Gracidea to change to Sky Forme

Use the Gracidea on Shaymin and Shaymin's Forme Changes it will turn into its Sky Forme. Talk to the woman in Lacunosa Town's Pokémon Center while Shaymin is in your party, and she will give you the Gracidea.

Pokémon Training







Conditions that revert Shaymin to Land Forme

- At night and late night
- When Frozen
- When put in the PC
- When Link Traded
- When put on the GTS

When left at the Day Care

Shaymin can be obtained during special distribution periods. Check www.pokemonblackwhite.com to find out if any Pokémon are currently being distributed.

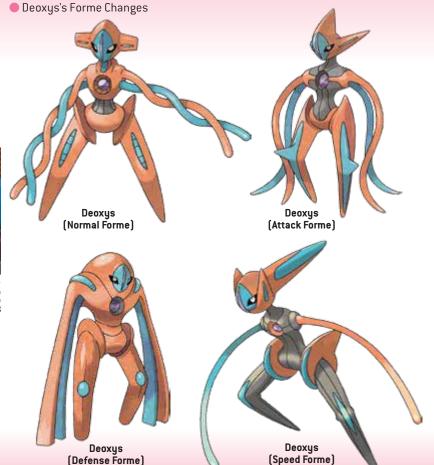
Deoxys

Examine the meteor in the Nacrene Museum

Deoxys changes into Normal Forme, Attack Forme, Defense Forme, or Speed Forme. Change its Forme by putting Deoxys in your party and examining the meteor in the Nacrene Museum. Every time you examine the meteor, Deoxys will change into another Forme.



Deoxys can be obtained during special distribution periods. Check www.pokemonblackwhite.com to find out if any Pokémon are currently being distributed.





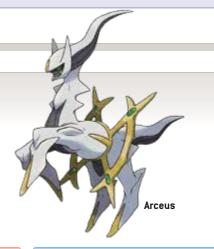
(Defense Forme)

Arceus

Holding a plate shifts Arceus's type

Give Arceus a plate to hold, such as the Draco Plate or the Splash Plate, and its type and appearance will shift. There are many mysteries surrounding the location of the plates. Try to find them all!





Arceus's Type Shift

Normal

When it's not holding a plate, Arceus is a Normal type.



Pokémon Training

Holding the Flame Plate makes it a Fire type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Splash Plate makes it a Water type. Get the plate on Route 13.



Holding the Meadow Plate makes it a Grass type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Zap Plate makes it an Electric type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Icicle Plate makes it an Ice type. Its location is unknown.



Fighting

Holding the Fist Plate makes it a Fighting type. Its location is unknown.



Poison

Holding the Toxic Plate makes it a Poison type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Earth Plate makes it a Ground type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Sky Plate makes it a Flying type. Its location is unknown.



Psychic

Holding the Mind Plate makes it a Psychic type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Insect Plate makes it a Bug type. Its location is unknown.



Holding the Stone Plate makes it a Rock type. Its location is unknown.



Ghost

Holding the Spooky Plate makes it a Ghost type. Its location is unknown.



Dragon

Holding the Draco Plate makes it a Dragon type. Get the plate on Route 13.



Dark

Holding the Dread Plate makes it a Dark type. Its location is unknown.



Steel

Holding the Iron Plate makes it a Steel type. Its location is unknown.



 Arceus can be obtained during special distribution periods. Check www.pokemonblackwhite.com to find out if any Pokémon are currently being distributed.





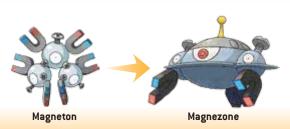
These five Pokémon have special evolutions

Magnezone

Level up in Chargestone Cave

In the Unova region, you evolve Magneton into
Magnezone by leveling it up in Chargestone Cave.



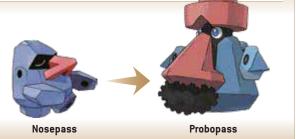


Probopass

Level up in Chargestone Cave

In the Unova region, you evolve Nosepass into Probopass by leveling it up in Chargestone Cave.





Leafeon

Level up in Pinwheel Forest

In the Unova region, you evolve Eevee into Leafeon by leveling it up near the moss-covered rock in Pinwheel Forest.

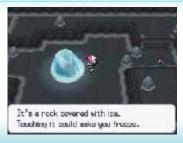




Glaceon

Level up in Twist Mountain

In the Unova region, you evolve Eevee into Glaceon by leveling it up near the ice-covered rock in Twist Mountain.



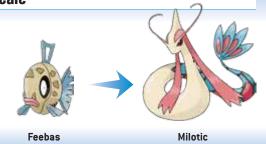


Milotic

Link Trade while it is holding a Prism Scale

In the Unova region, trade Feebas while it is holding a Prism Scale to evolve Feebas into Milotic. You can get a Prism Scale on Route 13.





THE OFFICIAL POKÉMON STRATEGY GUIDE

Items and Gym Badges

♦ A	
Adamant Orb	11,201,202
Amulet Coin	34, 92, 95, 217
Antidote	25, 44, 75, 88, 148, 159
Armor Fossil	194
Aspear Berry	8, 95, 112, 132, 133, 240
Awakening	44,75,88,159
♦ B	
Basic Badge	82,85,169,237
Berry Juice	6, 112, 189, 208
Bicycle	10, 40, 42, 43, 76, 88, 90, 105, 114, 132
Big Mushroom	9,110,112,202,208,210
Big Nugget	146, 200, 216
Big Pearl	68,72,116,146,208,221,246
Big Root	88
Black Belt	195
Black Flute	216, 221
BlackGlasses	100
Blue Flute	216,221
Blue Shard	146,208,210
Bluk Berry	7,8,112,211,225
Bolt Badge	105, 108, 113, 169, 238
BridgeMail D	116
BridgeMail M	208,210
BridgeMail S	92
BridgeMail T	160, 164
BridgeMail V	224
BrightPowder	34, 126
Bug Gem	29, 146
Burn Heal	44, 98, 159
♦ C	
Calcium	109, 159, 171, 229
Carbos	109, 154, 159, 225
Casteliacone	5, 6, 93, 95, 112, 200
Cell Battery	160, 161, 164, 165
C-Gear	9, 45, 55, 68, 71, 72, 131
Charcoal	82,83,110
Cheri Berry	8,95,112,124,125,150,240
Chesto Berry	8, 82, 88, 89, 95, 112, 211, 237
Choice Scarf	94
Claw Fossil	194
Cleanse Tag	146,148
CleverWing	29
Comet Shard	146,200,225
Cover Fossil	9, 102, 103, 115
♦D	
Damp Rock	8,146,155
Dark Gem	29,146
Dark Stone	10, 82, 86, 101, 104, 157, 179, 182

Dawn Stone	29, 146, 168, 208, 210
DeepSeaScale	221
DeepSeaTooth	140,221
Destiny Knot	160,164
Dire Hit	82,159
Dive Ball	9, 23, 78, 210, 216, 230
Dome Fossil	194
Dowsing MCHN	9,40,42,43,82,86,88,122,125,
Draco Plate	128, 131, 141, 144, 172, 222, 230 221, 251
Dragon Fang	151
Dragon Gem	29,146
Dragon Scale	140,221
Dragon Skull	9,85,86,88,89
Dream Mist	68, 71, 72, 74, 75
Dubious Disc	140,221
Dusk Ball	23,68,116,159,160,164,175,
Dusk Stone	192, 227 29, 143, 146, 168, 208, 210
♦ E	
Electirizer	221
Electric Gem	29, 146
Elixir	25,78,109,121,124
Energy Root	116
EnergyPowder	26, 116, 117
Escape Rope	25,44,78,99,109,159
Ether	25,88,98,136,245
Everstone	29,94,146
Eviolite	34,92
Exp. Share	37, 92, 95, 146, 148, 237
Expert Belt	116,118
♦ F	110,110
Favored Mail	C2 C0 D2 D2 11C 1ED 1CD 1C4
ravored Maii	63, 68, 82, 92, 116, 159, 160, 164, 208, 210, 216, 224
Fighting Gem	29, 146
Fire Gem	29, 146
Fire Stone	29, 36, 92, 94, 100, 146, 148, 208, 210
Float Stone	146, 160, 164
Fluffy Tail	208
Flying Gem	29, 146
Freeze Badge	146, 149, 169, 241
Fresh Water	68, 82, 92, 100, 105, 112, 116, 129, 146, 160, 162, 164, 208, 245
Full Heal	25, 44, 68, 69, 75, 136, 154, 159,
Full Incense	168, 171, 225, 228 193
Full Restore	25, 44, 109, 154, 155, 157, 168, 171,
	176, 180, 241, 246
♦ G	
Genius Wing	29
Ghost Gem	29, 146
Gracidea	224, 250
Gram 1	221,223
Gram 2	221,223
	<u> </u>

Gram 3	221, 223
Grass Gem	29, 146
Great Ball	23, 25, 44, 66, 68, 75, 88, 98, 100,
Green Shard	112, 159, 210 146, 208, 210
Greet Mail	63, 68, 82, 92, 116, 159, 160, 164,
Grepa Berry	208, 210, 216, 224 26, 112
Griseous Orb	11, 201, 202, 249
Ground Gem	29, 146
Guard Spec.	82, 159
⊗H	
Hard Stone	143, 146
Heal Ball	23,68,75,82,92,126,159,175
Heal Powder	26, 116, 117
Health Wing	29
Heart Scale	8, 25, 100, 117, 120, 121, 130, 131,
	140, 208, 210, 221
Heat Rock	8, 146, 155
Helix Fossil	194
HPUp	75, 109, 157, 159
Hyper Potion	25, 44, 88, 92, 98, 112, 121, 124, 126, 135, 143, 151, 159, 168, 187,
♦ 1	214, 231
Ice Gem	29, 146
Ice Heal	44, 121, 159
lcy Rock	8,146,155
Inquiry Mail	63, 68, 82, 92, 116, 159, 160, 164,
	208, 210, 216, 224
Insect Badge Iron	92,97,169,237
Iron Ball	25, 103, 120, 143, 133
♦ J	120 121 120 100 240
Jet Badge	129, 131, 138, 169, 240
♦ K	25 440 440 224
King's Rock	25, 146, 148, 221
♦ L	
Lava Cookie	6,7,112, 189
LaxIncense	193
LeafStone	24, 29, 36, 92, 94, 124, 125, 208, 210
Leftovers	25, 112, 150, 230
Legend Badge Lemonade	160, 162, 164, 166, 169, 242
Lenonade Leppa Berry	7,112,211,225,231,244
Light Stone Like Mail	10,82,86,101,104,157,179,182
	208, 210, 216, 224
LuckIncense	193
Lucky Egg	37, 112, 126, 127, 185, 200, 221
Lucky Punch	221
Lum Berry	7, 8, 75, 77, 112, 150, 211, 225, 230, 236
Lustrous Orb	11,201,202
Luxury Ball	22, 23, 175, 208, 216

OFFICIAL ADVENTURE WALKTHROUGH INDEX

ITEMS AND GYM BADGES 🧇 M to Z

Pokémon Training

♦ M	
Macho Brace	105, 107
Magmarizer	221
Magnet	126
Master Ball	10, 22, 23, 94, 160, 163, 164, 167
Max Elixir	25, 140, 150, 151, 154, 225
Max Ether	61, 75, 132, 221
Max Potion	44, 102, 136, 154, 159, 180, 225
Max Repel	44, 143, 159, 208, 246
Max Revive	25, 102, 109, 154, 168, 170, 171, 180, 192, 225, 246
Metal Coat	136, 221
Metal Powder	221
Miracle Seed	82,83,88
Moomoo Milk	112, 116, 117, 246
Moon Stone	25, 29, 88, 89, 136, 146, 208, 210
Muscle Wing	29
Mystic Water	78,82,83
♦ N	
Nest Ball	23, 92, 116, 159, 175, 210
Net Ball	23,82,88,92,116,121,159,175
NeverMeltice	210
Normal Gem	29,146
Nugget	25, 126, 128, 136, 146, 151, 171,
A O	195, 208, 245
♦ 0	
Odd Incense	193
Old Amber	194
Old Gateau	7,112,151,189
Oran Berry	68, 75, 77, 112, 236
Oval Stone	29, 146, 195, 208–210
♦ P	
Pal Pad	9,68,72
Parlyz Heal	44,73,88,126,148,159
Pearl	61, 146, 208
Pecha Berry	7, 8, 88, 89, 95, 112, 154, 155, 211, 225, 237, 241
Persim Berry	61,63,112,236
Plume Fossil	9, 102, 103
Poison Barb	154
Poison Gem	29, 146
Poké Ball	9, 22, 23, 39, 44, 56, 61, 63, 66, 73, 109, 125, 159, 208, 210
Poké Doll	208
Poké Toy	159
Pokédex	2,9-11,13,37-40,45,58,60-62,
	65, 92, 94, 100, 116, 117, 122, 130, 142, 145, 173, 187, 189, 192, 194,
Pokémon Egg	199, 232, 234, 248 10, 21, 76, 105, 140, 142
Pomeg Berry	26,112
Potion	25,44,61,66,73,159
	94, 192, 246
PP Max	25 402 402 422 425 :== :== :
PP Up	25, 102, 109, 132, 136, 157, 195, 245
	25, 102, 109, 132, 136, 157, 195, 245 23

Prop Case	10, 105, 106
Props	8, 106, 107, 112, 113, 160, 161,
Protector	164,165 221,231
Protein	26, 109, 121, 159, 195
Psychic Gem	29,146
Pure Incense	193
♦ 0	
Quake Badge	116, 118, 119, 127, 169, 239
Quick Ball	23, 92, 134, 159, 160, 164, 175, 210
Quick Claw	34,91
♦ R	
RageCandyBar	7, 112, 146, 148, 189–191
Rare Bone	140, 142, 200, 208, 210
Rare Candy	7, 25, 66, 106, 109–112, 126, 143, 146, 171, 180, 189, 214, 246
Rawst Berry	8,95,100,101,112,238
RazorClaw	221
RazorFang	214, 221
Reaper Cloth	213, 221
Red Flute	216, 221
Red Shard	146, 208, 210
Repeat Ball	23, 116, 175, 210
Repel	25, 44, 73, 75, 159
Reply Mail	63, 68, 82, 92, 116, 159, 160, 164, 208, 210, 216, 224
Resist Wing	29
Revival Herb	116
Revive	25, 44, 54, 92, 102, 109, 112, 126, 135, 136, 143, 151, 159, 187, 225,
Ring Target	228 160,164
Rock Gem	29, 146
Rock Incense	193
Rocky Helmet	34,121
Root Fossil	194
Rose Incense	193
RSVP Mail	63,68,82,92,116,159,160,164,
Running Shoes	208, 210, 216, 224 9, 43, 66, 67
♦ S	
Scope Lens	33, 34, 92
Sea Incense	193
Sharp Beak	129
Shell Bell	116, 117
Shiny Stone	29, 124, 146, 150, 151, 208, 210
Shoal Salt	112, 221
Shoal Shell	146, 221
Silk Scarf	124
SilverPowder	88
Sitrus Berry	112, 150, 154, 155, 204, 205, 228, 241–244
Skull Fossil	194
Smoke Ball	92
Smooth Rock	8, 146, 155
Soda Pop	6,83,92,112
Soft Sand	100
Soothe Bell	26,105

Spell Tag	135
Splash Plate	221,251
Star Piece	8, 89, 109, 146, 151, 208, 225
Stardust	100, 146, 151, 208, 210
Steel Gem	29, 146
Stick	112,221
Sun Stone	25, 29, 102, 105, 146, 208–210
Super Potion	25,44,66,75,88,98,100,159
Super Repel	44,159
Super Rod	11, 28, 58, 186
Sweet Heart	26, 112, 131
Swift Wing	29
♦ T	
Thanks Mail	63,68,82,92,116,159,160,164,
Thick Club	208, 210, 216, 224
Thunderstone	24,29,126,146,157,208,210
Timer Ball	23, 92, 126, 159, 160, 164, 175,
	195,210
TinyMushroom	112, 125, 208, 210
Town Map	9,42,58,60
Trio Badge	68,70,169,236
TwistedSpoon	187
♦U	
Ultra Ball	9, 23, 25, 44, 98, 100, 116, 132, 136, 154, 159, 171, 180, 210, 213, 215,
II- C 4-	229, 246
Up-Grade	204,221
Vs. Recorder	10.04.105
A M	10,94,105
◇ W	
Water Gem	29,146
Water Stone	29, 36, 92, 94, 116, 146, 148, 208, 210
Wave Incense	193
White Flute	
	216, 221
Wide Lens	216,221 94
Wide Lens ♦ X	
♦ X	94
♦ X X Accuracy	94 26, 82, 98, 159
♦ X X Accuracy X Attack	94 26,82,98,159 26,82,105,159
X Accuracy X Attack X Defend	94 26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159
X Accuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def	94 26,82,98,159 26,82,105,159 73,82,159
X Accuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special	94 26,82,98,159 26,82,105,159 73,82,159 82,159
X X Accuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special X Speed	26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159 82, 159 82, 159 68, 82, 159
X X Accuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special X Speed	26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159 82, 159 82, 159 68, 82, 159
X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X	94 26,82,98,159 26,82,105,159 73,82,159 82,159 82,159 68,82,159 9,42,58,59,63,67,97,99,104,133
X X X Accuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special X Speed X transceiver Yache Berry	26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159 82, 159 82, 159 68, 82, 159 9, 42, 58, 59, 63, 67, 97, 99, 104, 133
X X XAccuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special X Speed Xtransceiver Yache Berry Yellow Flute	94 26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159 82, 159 82, 159 68, 82, 159 9, 42, 58, 59, 63, 67, 97, 99, 104, 133 92, 96, 112 216, 221
X X XAccuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special X Speed Xtransceiver Yache Berry Yellow Flute	94 26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159 82, 159 82, 159 68, 82, 159 9, 42, 58, 59, 63, 67, 97, 99, 104, 133 92, 96, 112 216, 221 146, 208, 210
X X X Accuracy X Attack X Defend X Sp. Def X Special X Speed X Xtransceiver Yache Berry Yellow Flute Yellow Shard	94 26, 82, 98, 159 26, 82, 105, 159 73, 82, 159 82, 159 82, 159 68, 82, 159 9, 42, 58, 59, 63, 67, 97, 99, 104, 133 92, 96, 112 216, 221

TMs/HMs 💠 MAIN CHARACTERS 💠 INDEX

● TMs/HMs

Acrobatics	129, 131, 183
Aerial Ace	108, 129, 131, 177, 178, 197
Attract	92,177
Blizzard	36, 146, 162, 166, 183, 217
Brick Break	35, 146, 149, 177, 197
Bulk Up	212,213,233
Bulldoze	126, 127, 178
Calm Mind	190, 191, 233
Charge Beam	132,178
Cut	9, 27, 52, 56, 66–68, 71, 73–75, 110, 115, 221
Dig	27, 36, 98, 99, 108
Dive	11, 27, 52, 56, 115, 216–219
Double Team	36, 140, 187, 233
Dragon Claw	171,185
Dragon Tail	35, 160, 162, 164, 166
Dream Eater	187, 198
Earthquake	177, 184, 190, 197, 198, 215
Echoed Voice	105
Embargo	151
Energy Ball	228
Facade	154
False Swipe	45, 52, 58, 61
Fire Blast	36, 146, 177
Flame Charge	156
Flamethrower	198, 214
Flash	27, 38, 52, 56, 78, 80, 92, 95, 97, 115, 143, 144, 195
Flash Cannon	136, 149, 198, 199
Fling	157, 158
Fly	10, 27, 38, 86, 104, 115, 116, 119, 134, 136, 142, 145, 153, 163, 167, 172, 187, 239
Focus Blast	78, 177, 183, 197, 199
Frost Breath	146, 149, 162, 166

Frustration	105
Giga Impact	159, 199
Grass Knot	36,88,118
Gyro Ball	109
Hail	129
Hidden Power	45, 53, 58, 61, 130
Hone Claws	121, 193, 233
Hyper Beam	159, 183
Ice Beam	225
Light Screen	105
Low Sweep	32,78
Overheat	231
Payback	110, 197
Poison Jab	124
Protect	45, 53, 58, 61
Psychic	35, 177, 178, 185, 197, 198, 221
Psyshock	225
Rain Dance	32, 129
Reflect	105
Rest	53, 92
Retaliate	32, 82, 85, 90, 145, 173
Return	35, 105
Roar	168
Rock Polish	126, 193, 233
Rock Slide	118, 131, 143, 173, 215
Rock Smash	83,85,88
Rock Tomb	36, 100, 108
Safeguard	105
Sandstorm	129,215
Scald	32, 36, 118, 121
Shadow Ball	35, 102, 177, 178, 184, 197, 217

Shadow Claw	135
Sky Drop	129
Sludge Bomb	35,154
SolarBeam	36,88
Stone Edge	178, 183, 195
Strength	10, 27, 56, 66, 67, 105, 106, 110, 111, 115, 140, 143–145, 151, 154, 155, 171, 172, 187, 204, 205, 221–223, 225
Struggle Bug	92,97
Substitute	136
Sunny Day	36, 129
Surf	10, 27, 53, 56, 61, 63, 68, 72, 75, 77, 78, 80, 87, 88, 90, 98, 100, 110, 115, 116, 119, 124, 125, 136, 138, 140–142, 144, 146, 151, 152, 154, 155, 171, 177, 187, 195, 210, 212–216, 218, 219, 221, 225, 229, 231, 233
Swords Dance	187, 188, 233
Taunt	36, 171
Telekinesis	140
Thief	78,80
Thunder	146, 197, 198
Thunder Wave	105
Thunderbolt	140
Torment	36,98
Toxic	140, 198
Trick Room	214
U-turn	221, 223
Venoshock	204
Volt Switch	105, 108, 131
Waterfall	10, 27, 56, 110, 111, 115, 140, 142, 212, 231, 233
Wild Charge	171,217
Will-O-Wisp	36,135
Work Up	68,70
X-Scissor	132

Main Characters

Alder	10, 11, 18, 19, 63, 80, 86, 101, 104, 112, 113, 138, 153, 160, 164, 179, 194, 199, 246
Amanita	9, 44, 72
Bianca	5, 7, 9, 10, 12, 27, 43, 58, 59, 60, 61, 63,
	64, 67, 74, 77, 85, 86, 88, 96, 97, 99, 100,
	105–107, 116, 119, 127, 128, 149, 152, 154,
	155, <mark>156</mark> , 160, 164, 168, 170, 180, 186,
	187, 232, 236, 237, 239, 241, 246
Bianca's Dad	60,107
Bronius	11,193,233
Brycen	10, 16, 149, 152, 153, 241
Burgh	9, 15, 85, 89, 96, 97, 237
Caitlin	10, 18, 174, 176, 178, 198, 216, 242, 246
Cedric Juniper	10, 11, 13, 86, 130, 147, 152, 187
Cheren	5,8–12,58,59,60,61,63,68,69,74,76,
	77, 79, 80, 82, 85, 96, 99, 100, 101, 104,
	113, 116, 122, 123, 138, 139, 149, 152,
	153, 168, 169, 170, 179, 186, 187, 192, 196, 236, 238–240, 242, 246
Chili	9, 15, 69, 70, 180, 236
	0,10,00,00,200

Cilan 9,15,69,70,1	
Clau 10 16 113 114 116 118 123 1	27, 138,
10, 10, 113, 114, 110, 110, 123, 1	239
Cress 9, 15, 69, 70, 1	.80,236
Cynthia 5, 8, 11, 216, 217, 2	19, 244
Drayden 5, 10, 17, 120, 160, 161, 162, 16	63–166, .96, 242
Elesa 10, 16, 107, 108, 113, 1	14,238
Fennel 5, 9, 13, 27, 64, 68, 71, 73	2,74,75
Ghetsis 10, 14, 63, 65, 75, 96, 104, 118, 1	27, 149,
157, 160, 164, 181, 184, 185-1	
193, 202, 203, 2	233, 242
Giallo 11, 153, 212, 2	213, 233
Gorm 11,89,1	.88,233
Grimsley 10, 17, 174, 177, 197, 2	242, 246
Hawes	84,85
Iris 10, 17, 96, 120, 160, 164, 166, 1	67, 196, 242

Lenora	9, 10, 15, 84, <mark>85</mark> , 86, 89, 90, 237
Looker	11, 186–188, 191, 193, 212, 233
Marshal	10, 18, 174, <mark>178, 198,</mark> 242, 246
Mom	9,42,59,60,62,67,100,133,186
N	5,9,10,13,35,63,65,84,86,104,107,127, 128,131,153,160,164,175,179-182, 183,184,186-188,194,203,212,233, 236-238,240,242
Professor Juniper	5, 7, 9, 10, 13, 23, 37, 42, 45, 58, 60–65, 71, 74, 86, 99, 100, 104, 127, 128, 130, 163, 167, 187, 190
Rood	11, 187, 233
Ryoku	11, 191, 192, 233
Shadow Triad	11, 127, 149, 181, 202, 249
Shauntal	10, 17, 174, 177, 197, 242, 246
Skyla	10, 16, 130, 131, 133, 136, 240
Zinzolin	11, 123, 193, 233

Type Matchup Chart

Pokémon Training

Types are assigned both to moves and to the Pokémon themselves. These types can greatly affect the amount of damage dealt or received in battle, so learn how they line up against one another and give yourself the edge in battle.





		Defending Pokémon's Type																
		Normal	Fire	Water	Grass	Electric	Ice	Fighting	Poison	Ground	Flying	Psychic	Bug	Rock	Ghost	Dragon	Dark	Steel
	Normal														X			
	Fire				•		•						•					•
	Water		•							•				•				
	Grass			•						•				•				
tta	Electric			•						×	•							
c Ki	Ice				•					•	•					•		
ng F	Fighting	•					•							•	×		•	•
Attacking Pokémon's Move Type	Poison				•													X
émo	Ground		•			•			•		×			•				•
m's	Flying				•			•					•					
Mo	Psychic							•	•								×	
e J	Bug				•							•					•	
уре	Rock		•				•				•		•					
	Ghost	×										•			•			
	Dragon															•		
	Dark											•			•			
	Steel						•							•				

- Very effective ×2 "It's super effective!"
 - ×1 [No Icon] Normal Damage
- Not too effective ×0.5 "It's not very effective..."
- \times 0 No effect "It doesn't affect..."
- Fire-type Pokémon are immune to the Burned condition.
- Grass-type Pokémon are immune to Leech Seed.
- Ice-type Pokémon are immune to the Frozen condition, and take no damage from the Hail weather condition.
- Poison-type Pokémon are immune to the Poison and Badly Poisoned conditions, even when switching in with Toxic Spikes in play. Poison-type Pokémon nullify Toxic Spikes (unless these Pokémon are also Flying type or have the Levitate ability).
- Ground-type Pokémon are immune to Thunder Wave and take no damage from the Sandstorm weather condition.
- Flying-type Pokémon cannot be damaged by Spikes when switching in, or become afflicted with a Poison or Badly Poisoned condition due to switching in with Toxic Spikes in play.
- Rock-type Pokémon are immune to the Sandstorm weather condition. Their Sp. Def also goes up in the Sandstorm weather condition.
- Steel-type Pokémon are immune to the Sandstorm weather condition. They are also immune to the Poisoned
 and Badly Poisoned condition. Even if switched in with Toxic Spikes in play, they will not be afflicted by the
 Poison or Badly Poisoned condition.



The Official Pokémon Strategy Guide



Staff

PUBLISHED BY

The Pokémon Company International 333 108th Ave NE, Suite 1900 Bellevue, WA 98004

TM, ®, and © The Pokémon Company International. All rights reserved.

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Michael G. Ryan

TRANSLATORS

Hisato Yamamori Tim Hove Sayuri Munday

EDITORS

Kellyn Ballard Blaise Selby Hollie Beg Wolfgang Baur

COVER DESIGN

Eric Medalle Bridget O'Neill

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Heather Dalgleish Yasuhiro Usui Mikiko Ryu David Numrich Rey Perez Antoin Johnson Naoya Sugie Hank Woon Eoin Sanders

DESIGN & PRODUCTION

Prima Games

Mario De Govia Shaida Boroumand Fernando Bueno Stephanie Sanchez Melissa Smith Jamie Bryson

99 Lives Design, LLC Adam Crowell



ISBN: 978-0-307-89061-0

Published in the United States using materials from the Pokémon Black and Pokémon White Official Complete Adventure Clear Guide. Published in Japan by Media Factory, Inc.

SPECIAL THANKS TO:

Editor: Shusuke Motomiya and ONEUP, Inc.

 ${\tt Design~\&~Layout: RAGTIME~CO., LTD., and~SUZUKIKOUBOU, Inc.}$